



Police Drill Manual



BUREAU OF POLICE RESEARCH & DEVELOPMENT

MINISTRY OF HOME AFFAIRS

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA

NEW DELHI

POLICE DRILL MANUAL



**BUREAU OF POLICE RESEARCH AND
DEVELOPMENT
MINISTRY OF HOME AFFAIRS
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
1995**

| | CONTENTS | Page |
|---|--------------------------------|-------------|
| | CHAPTER I | |
| Definitions | | 1 |
| | CHAPTER II | |
| 1. Object of Drill | | 3 |
| 2. Principles of Instructions | | 3 |
| 3. Preparation | | 4 |
| 4. Method of Instructions | | 4 |
| 5. Arrangements and Conclusion of Instructional Periods | | 5 |
| 6. The Backward Man | | 5 |
| 7. General Instructions on Drilling Recruits | | 5 |
| 8. Words of Command | | 6 |
| 9. Inspection | | 8 |
| | CHAPTER III | |
| | SQUAD DRILL AT THE HALT | |
| 10. Formation of Squads with Interval | | 13 |
| 11. Attention | | 13 |
| 12. Standing at Ease | | 14 |
| 13. Standing Easy | | 14 |
| 14. Dressing a Squad with Intervals | | 15 |
| 15. Turning and Inclining by Numbers | | 15 |
| | CHAPTER IV | |
| | MARCHING | |
| 16. Length of Pace and Time in Marching | | 18 |
| 17. Position in Marching | | 18 |
| 18. Marching in Quick and Slow Time | | 19 |
| 19. Paces Forward and to the Rear | | 23 |
| 20. Changing Step in Slow and Quick Time | | 23 |

| | |
|---|----|
| 21. Marching in Double Time | 24 |
| 22. Breaking into Slow, Quick and Double Time | 25 |
| 23. The Side Pace | 26 |
| 24. Turning when on the March | 27 |

**CHAPTER V
SALUTING WITHOUT ARMS**

| | |
|-----------------------------|----|
| 25. Saluting at the Halt | 29 |
| 26. Saluting on the March. | 31 |
| 27. Dismissing without Arms | 32 |

**CHAPTER VI
CANE DRILL**

| | |
|---|----|
| 28. Introduction | 33 |
| 29. Difference between Baton and Cane | 33 |
| 30. Position of Cane | 33 |
| 31. Saluting with Cane | 34 |
| 32. Dismissing with the Cane | 35 |
| 33. Drill Movements when Marching with Baton/Cane | 36 |

**CHAPTER VII
GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS ON SALUTING**

| | |
|--|----|
| 34. Saluting when without Head-Dress and when Wearing Plain Clothes, etc. | 37 |
| 35. Miscellaneous | 38 |

**CHAPTER VIII
DRILL IN THREE RANKS AT THE HALT**

| | |
|---|----|
| 36. Falling in a Squad/Platoon | 40 |
| 37. Blank File | 41 |
| 38. Dressing | 41 |
| 39. Drill on the Move | 42 |
| 40. Platoon in Line and in Threes | 43 |
| 41. Dressing on the March | 43 |
| 42. Marching in Line | 44 |
| 43. A line Changing Direction to a Flank | 45 |
| 44. Marching in Threes | 47 |
| 45. Turning from Threes into Line on the Move | 47 |
| 46. Turning from Line into Threes on the Move | 48 |

II

- | | |
|--|----|
| 47. Wheeling in Threes | 49 |
| 48. Forming Line from Threes Facing the same Direction | 50 |

CHAPTER IX FORMING TWO RANKS

- | | |
|--|----|
| 49. To form Two Ranks from Three Ranks | 53 |
| 50. To form Three Ranks from Two Ranks | 53 |

CHAPTER X MARCHING OFF IN SINGLE FILE

- | | |
|---|----|
| 51. A Squad Facing its Right Flank in Three with the Front Rank On the Left, Marching Off in Single File | 55 |
| 52. A Squad in Three Ranks (Line) in the Advance Position, Marching off in Single File | 55 |

CHAPTER XI DRILL WITH ARMS

- | | |
|--|----|
| 53. General Rules-Rifle Exercises | 58 |
| 54. Falling in with Rifles at the Order | 58 |
| 55. Attention | 59 |
| 56. Stand at Ease and Stand Easy | 59 |
| 57. Slope from the Order, Order from the Slope | 60 |
| 58. Present from the Slope, Slope from the Present | 62 |
| 59. Fix Bayonets, Unfix Bayonets | 64 |
| 60. Saluting at the Slope | 65 |
| 61. Port From the Order, Order from the Port | 66 |
| 62. Port From the Slope, Slope from the Port | 67 |
| 63. For Inspection Port Arms, Ease Springs | 67 |
| 64. Examine from the Port, Ease Spring, Port from the Examine, Order from the Examine | 68 |
| 65. Trail From the Order, Order From the Trail | 69 |
| 66. Trail from the Slope, Slope from the Trail | 70 |
| 67. Secure from the Slope, Slope from the Secure | 71 |
| 68. Secure from the Order, Order from the Secure | 72 |
| 69. Change Arms at the Trail | 73 |
| 70. Ground Arms, Take up Arms | 73 |
| 71. The Short Trail | 74 |
| 72. The Sling Arms | 74 |

III

| | |
|---|----|
| 73. The Present from Order | 75 |
| 74. On Guard from the Slope | 75 |
| 75. On Guard from Order, Order from <i>the</i> Guard. | 76 |
| 76. High Port from Slope and <i>Vice Versa</i> . | 77 |
| 77. High Port from Order and <i>Vice Versa</i> . | 77 |
| 78. From Order Arms to Shoulder Arms, and <i>Vice Versa</i> . | |

CHAPTER XII

SWORD DRILL

| | |
|-----------------------------|----|
| 79. Sword Drill Movements | 79 |
| 80. Saluting with the Sword | 82 |
| 81. General Notes | 84 |

CHAPTER XIII

EXTENDED ORDER DRILL

| | |
|------------------------------|----|
| 82. Introduction | 86 |
| 83. Words of Command | 91 |
| 84. Signals with the Hand | 92 |
| 85. Signals with the Rifle | 93 |
| 86. Control by Whistle Blast | 93 |

CHAPTER XIV

STREET LINING

| | |
|--|----|
| 87. For Guarding a Road on Both Sides | 94 |
| 88. Closing | |
| | 95 |
| 89. For Guarding a Road on Both Sides Alternately | 95 |
| 90. Closing | 96 |
| 91. For Deploying a Platoon or Company from the Centre | 96 |
| 92. For Dividing a Road into Two Halves for Passing Vehicular and Pedestrian Traffic | 97 |
| 93. Closing | 97 |

CHAPTER XV

COMPANY DRILL

| | |
|--|-----|
| 94. Strength of a Company | 98 |
| 95. Formations and Positions of Officers, and Under Officers | 99 |
| 96. Dressing | 100 |
| 97. A Company in Close Column of Platoons Failing in | 101 |
| 98. A Company when Halted Changing Ranks | |

| | |
|---|-----|
| 99. Close Column Movements | 102 |
| 100. Column Movements | 106 |
| 101. Line Movements | 111 |
| 102. Movements from Column of Threes | 113 |
| 103. Movements from Line of Platoon in Three (In Column Distance) | 116 |
| 104. Dismissing | 117 |

**CHAPTER XVI
CEREMONIAL DRILL**

| | |
|---|-----|
| 105. General Arrangements | 120 |
| 106. The Inspection or Review Parade Ground | 122 |
| 107. Unit Organisation | 124 |
| 108. Parade Formations | 124 |
| 109. Sizing a Dismounted Unit | 124 |
| 110. Telling Off a Dismounted Unit | 125 |
| 111. General Instructions for Inspection and Review | 125 |
| 112. Special Instructions for Officers | 126 |
| 113. Receiving an Inspecting or Reviewing Officer | 127 |
| 114. Receiving the President and the Governors | 128 |
| 115. The Inspection | 128 |
| 116. Marching Past | 129 |
| 117. Post of Officers | 130 |
| 118. Battalion Marching Past by Companies | 131 |
| 119. Marching Past in Column of Route | 132 |
| 120. Marching Past by Platoon in Quick Time | 133 |
| 121. Marching Past by Platoon in Slow Time | 133 |
| 122. Advancing in Review Order | 135 |
| Appendices A, B, C, D, E, F, and G | 135 |

**CHAPTER XVII
GUARDS AND SENTRIES**

| | |
|---|-----|
| 123. Definitions | 144 |
| 124. Guard Mounting | 145 |
| 125. Relieving, Posting and Dismissing a Guard | 151 |
| 126. Posting, Relieving, Marching and Dismissing Sentries and Reliefs | 154 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| 127. Turning Out a Guard for Inspection by Day | 133 |
| 128. Turning Out a Guard by Night | 156 |
| 129. General Rules for Sentries | 157 |
| 130. General Instructions and Compliments to be given by Guards and Sentries | 158 |

**CHAPTER XVIII
GUARD OF HONOUR**

| | |
|--|-----|
| 131. Composition, Strength and Occasions | 160 |
| 132. Dress | 162 |
| 133. Formation | 162 |
| 134. Aide-De Camp | 163 |
| 135. Conduction Officer | 163 |
| 136. Colors | 163 |
| 137. Salute | 163 |
| 138. National Anthem | 164 |
| 139. Inspection | 164 |
| 140. General | 165 |

**CHAPTER XIX
FIRING A FEU-DE-JOIE**

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| 141. Occasions | 167 |
| 142. Procedure and Words of Command | 167 |
| 143. Giving of Cheers at Parades | 168 |

**CHAPTER XX
PASSING OUT PARADE**

| | |
|---|-----|
| 144. Introduction | 170 |
| 145. General Instructions | 170 |
| 146. Formation of Parade | 171 |
| 147. Presenting Compliments to Head of the Organisation/Institution | 173 |
| 148. Arrival of the VIP / VVIP | 174 |
| 149. Review of the Parade by the VIP | 174 |
| 150. Oath Taking | 175 |
| 151. Ceremonial March Past | 177 |
| 152. Advance in Review order, Report by the Head of the Institution, Prize Distribution and VIP's Address | 180 |

| | |
|--------------------|-----|
| 153. Peeling Off | 182 |
| 154. Special Notes | 182 |

CHAPTER XXI
COLOUR PRESENTATION PARADE

PART-I

| | |
|--|-----|
| 155. Definition of Color, its parts and their Measurements | 184 |
| 156. Carry Belt and its Dressing | 185 |
| 157. Dressing of Color | 185 |
| 158. Casing and Uncasing the Color | 185 |
| 159. Uthao Nishan and Bazu Nishan | 186 |
| 160. Uthao Nishan to Kandhe Nishan and vice versa. | 187 |
| 161. Let Fly, Holding and Dipping of the Color | 187 |
| 162. Color Party, Escort, and Priests | 188 |

PART II

| | |
|---|-----|
| 163. General Instructions | 190 |
| 164. VVIPs to Present the Color | 190 |
| 165. Strength of Parade | 191 |
| 166. Formation of Parade | 191 |
| 167. Arrival of Cased Colors | 193 |
| 168. Presenting Compliments to the DGP | 194 |
| 169. Arrival of VVIP/VIP | 194 |
| 170. Review of the Parade by VVIP | 195 |
| 171. Parade Troops | 195 |
| 172. Formation of Hollow Sphere | 196 |
| 173. Pilling of Drums and Consecration of the Color | 197 |
| 174. Presentation of Color | 198 |
| 175. Re-formation of Parade on the Inspection line | 198 |
| 176. Ceremonial March Past | 199 |
| 177. Advance in Review Order and Speech by VVIP | 201 |
| 178. Return of Colors | 201 |
| 179. Handing over the Parade | 202 |

**CHAPTER XXII
FAREWELL PARADE**

| | |
|--|-----|
| 180. Introduction | 204 |
| 181. General Instructions | 204 |
| 182. Strength of Parade | 204 |
| 183. Formation of Parade | 205 |
| 184. Arrival of the Out-going Officer | 207 |
| 185. Review of the Parade by the Out-going Officer | 207 |
| 186. Ceremonial March Past | 207 |
| 187. Advance in Review Order and Speeches | 208 |
| 188. Giving Cheers to the Out-going Officer | 208 |
| 189. General Notes | 208 |

**CHAPTER XXIII
FUNERAL DRILL**

| | |
|--|-----|
| 190. Ceremony to be Observed at a Funeral | 209 |
| 191. Procedure on arrival at the place of Interment/cremation Ground | 210 |
| 192. Procedure During the Service | 211 |
| 193. Procedure for Firing the Volleys | 212 |
| 194. Procedure for Carrying the Coffin | 212 |
| 195. Procedure for doing Reverse Arms and Rest on your Arms Reversed | 212 |
| 196. Procedure when Sword is used in Funeral Drill | 215 |

PREFACE

1. The last edition of the Police Drill Manual was brought out by the Bureau in 1977. It received an overwhelming response from well as State Police forces and we continued to get demand for the Manual.

2. To meet this demand, it was decided to republish the Manual after revising it thoroughly. Revision of the Manual was done in consultation with some Central Para-military Forces, State Police Forces and the Police Academy, Hyderabad. The present edition is the result of this effort.

3. In addition to many alterations done in the provisions of the Manual since its publication, the present Manual incorporates three entirely new sections i.e. on Passing Out Parade, Color Presentation Parade and Parade.

4. Besides incorporating the Hindi words of command at places, Hindi equivalents of English words of command have been set forth in an annexure.

5. We shall gladly welcome your comments and suggestions if any.

SD/-

N.K.Singh

Director General

Jan, 1995

Police Bureau of Police Research & Development

CHAPTER I

Definitions

1. **Alignment**—Any straight line on which a body "of men is formed or is to form.
2. **Column**—Bodies of men—one behind the other on parallel and successive alignments, at such a distance from one another as when formed to an angle of 90 degrees to either flank, will bring them into line with three paces interval between each.
3. **Close Column**—A column with distance reduced to suit requirements.
For normal purposes Close Column of platoon will be formed at 12 paces distance. For Drill seven paces is more convenient.
4. **Column of Route**—A column of threes with not more than three men abreast in any part of the column, including officers and supernumeraries. The normal formation for men marching closed up on a road.
5. **Column of Threes**—A column with its officers and supernumeraries maintaining their places except for the officer in command who places himself at the head of the unit or sub-unit.
6. **Covering**—The act of a body placing itself directly in rear of another.
7. **Depth**—The space occupied by a body of men from front to rear.
8. **Directing Body**—The body, unit or subordinate unit on which the direction, pace and alignment or relative positions of the several parts of a formation depend.
9. **Distance**—The space between men or bodies of men from front to rear.
10. **Dressing**—The act of taking up an alignment correctly.
11. **File**—A front rank man and his coverer or coverers.
12. **Blank File**—A file without a center and rear rank man, or without a center rank man. A blank file is the second file from the left. While in two ranks, the blank file is the third file from the left.
13. **Flank**—Either side of a body of men, as opposed to its front or rear.
14. **Directing flank**—That by which units march or dress.
15. **Inner flank**—That nearer the directing flank and serving as pivot when a body is changing its direction.
16. **Outer flank**—That opposite to the inner or directing flank (**often known as reverse flank**).
17. **Forming**—A method of changing direction as opposed to wheeling.
18. **Front**—The direction in which men are facing or moving at any given time.
19. **Frontage**—The extent of ground covered laterally by a body of men.
20. **Incline**—A diagonal movement by which ground is gained to the front and flank simultaneously without alteration of the original alignment.

21. Interval—The lateral space between men or bodies of men on the same alignment measured from flank to flank. Between dismounted men intervals are measured from elbow to elbow. Each dismounted man is allotted a lateral space of 24 inches in two ranks; in three ranks this lateral space is at arm's length with first clenched.

22. Line—Units formed on the same alignment.

23. Markers—Personnel employed in certain circumstances, to mark points on which to direct a movement or by which to regulate a formation or alignment.

24. Mass—A battalion with its companies in line of Close Column of Platoons, with 5 paces of interval between companies.

25. Open Order—An increased distance between ranks for ceremonial or inspection purposes.

26. Close Order—The normal distance between ranks in line.

27. Pace—A measurement of distance on foot (*e.g.* 30 inches). Also ate of movement.

28. Rank—A line of men, side by side.

29. Single file—Men one behind the other on a frontage of one man at normal marching distance.

30. Supernumeraries—The N.C.Os etc., forming the third rank if in the fourth rank if in threes.

31. Wheeling—A movement by which a body of men on parade changes direction, each rank of file pivoting on the inner flank but staining its dressing.

CHAPTER II

Section I

Object Of Drill

The primary object of parade ground drill is to build up and maintain in a recruit a high standard of discipline, turn-out, bearing and pride in self and in the Police Force. In addition to these qualities being instilled among the force, well executed parade ground drill also indirectly develops individual self-respect and gives to the Force a feeling of power, cohesion and purpose. Drill brings about the co-ordination between mind and body and serves as the basis for imparting other service training.

2. A high standard of drill has a value over and above that obtained by the participants in a particular parade, for it also gives to the spectators a feeling of pride and confidence in the Force. The public generally see single policemen, or small parties on duty in the cities and rural areas, but they have too few opportunities of seeing larger formations to judge the police as an efficient and disciplined force. The Ceremonial Drill provides a valuable opportunity for the Force to demonstrate to the public as a whole their high standard of training and discipline.

3. The drill plays an essential part in the training of men for outdoor field work, for it teaches strict and implicit obedience to orders and develops in the man pride and confidence in the force to which he belongs. Well executed drill causes the men temporarily to exchange their individuality for the corporate spirit and thus helps to develop collective morale and *esprit de corps*.

Section 2

2. Principles of Instruction

The drill instructor must bear in mind that instruction is an art and should be studied as such. He must always bear in mind the primary object of his subject, which is to promote and maintain a high standard of discipline, turnout, hearing and *esprit de corps*. He will at all times reflect to his squad the qualities which drill is designed to instil in the men. The drill instructor must ensure that a squad understands reasons for doing various movements. He must not be a slave driver nor must he imagine that he can achieve his object only by bullying and shouting, but at the same time his attitude towards his squad must always be firm and determined. He, cannot afford to accept anything but the very highest standards in all movements. To achieve the best results the instructor himself must mirror the qualities that drill is designed to develop—he must in fact teach by his own example.

Section 3

3. Preparation

The drill instructor must prepare his lesson with the same care and attention to detail as is necessary for all other instructions. He must think out his lesson beforehand and know thoroughly the subject matter he is to teach. The drill instructor must also plan his instruction with an eye to the position of and arrangements for his squad. No member of the squad should be allowed to face or have his back to the sun. If possible, the whole of the squad should work in the shade.

Section 4

4. Method Of Instructions

Action is the main means of instruction in drill. Words alone are of little value and the talkative instructor will soon lose the interest of his squad. The following should always be adhered to:—

- (a) Complete demonstration.
- (b) Demonstration by numbers, with explanation. (Supernumerary if present, to be used for demonstration). Instructor to point out and explain drill movements.
- (c) Collective practice by squads, by numbers.
- (d) Individual practice by numbers.
- (e) Collectively by squads, (counting the time).
- (f) Collectively by squads, (judging the time).

2. The instructor will not attempt to explain his actions during the complete demonstration of the drill movement. He will not demonstrate the wrong way of doing the movement. During the period of individual practice he will check each individual and explain his faults to him.

3. The drill instructor must remember that he is a teacher like any other type of instructor. He must employ normal principles and methods of instruction to teach his squad, but at the same time bear in mind that his example will always retard or improve their performances. When actually giving a word of command to his squad, he himself will stand to attention, though he will of course be free to move afterwards in his own time to check faults or errors in the squad.

4. When exercising the trained man, it should not be necessary for the instructor to depart from the correct position of attention though it will often be necessary and desirable for him to demonstrate and correct faults in his squad. Again it cannot be too strongly emphasized that example constitutes the finest teaching in DRIL the bearing, manner and carriage of the instructor will inevitably and accurately

reflect themselves in his squad, and it is, therefore, the task of the instructor to set his squad a high standard by his personal example and employ normal techniques of instruction to instil this standard into them.

Section 5

5. Arrangements And Conclusion Of Instructional Periods

1. Instructional periods must be planned with an eye to variety. Un-organized periods of aimless drill are valueless and teach nothing. Fifteen minutes is the maximum time to spend on any one drill movement at a time.

2. Instructional periods should not exceed forty minutes at a time. A drill period should always end with five minutes "Good Drill" devoted to movements which the instructor knows the squad can execute perfectly. The squad will thus leave the parade ground with a sense of achievement and pride in their performance.

Section 6

6. The Backward Man

Instructors must never be allowed to make the backward man in a drill squad the butt for their abuse or sarcasm. A man must not be allowed to develop the impression that he is slow, by the instructor constantly calling out his name. The instructor should gradually and unobtrusively work round to the backward man in a squad, and by standing in front of him show him what he is doing wrong. Patience and understanding will soon develop the slow starter, who with proper handling will often prove ultimately to be one of the best men in the squad.

Section 7

7. General Instructions On Drilling Recruits

The object of drill is to teach and maintain discipline. It is essential that drill should be done extremely well. Slovenly drill merely impairs discipline. The quality of drill is all important and this matters far more than the variety and quantity of drill practices. It is, however, essential that while the standard of drill should be higher than it was ever before, the amount of time which can be devoted to it should be reduced.

2. All movements on parade are to be performed smartly. Stamping of feet in such movements as turning, coming to attention or standing at ease should not be permitted.

3. The details of drill movements given in the following sections are for the information of the instructor only. It will not be repeated word for word to the men on parade.

4. When recruits are being taught a particular motion or exercise the instructor will form a squad round him and explain what is required in simple language. As soon as he is satisfied that his meaning is clear he will proceed to the second stage, (Demonstration) by performing the motion

himself. During this stage he will point out details done by him or by his demonstrator. The men will then be made to perform the movements themselves firstly by numbers, secondly by individual practice, thirdly by counting out the time collectively and fourthly by judging the time. It is stressed here that the recruits will learn through practicing the movements and being corrected while doing so individually.

5. Recruits will be taught that, when on parade, it is the duty of every man to see that he is at all times in the correct dressing from which ever flank is the directing flank. This principle applies both when falling in and whenever the squad is brought to face the advance position after marching except in ceremonial drill where men will not correct their dressing on completion of a movement until they receive the command to dress.

6. Men should be given frequent short rests (Stand Easy) between exercises.

7. When men of a squad are being tested separately in any movement, those not under instruction at the moment should be ordered to stand easy or to continue practicing the movement in their own time.

8. In drill movements which have two or more movements, when judging the time, recruits should be taught to make a uniform pause after each motion, equal to two paces in quick time. In early stages of training, every member of a squad must be made to call out the time for each movement. This fixes the standard time of 40 movements in a minute.

Section 8

8. Words Of Command

Good drill depends in the first instance on good words of command.

2. Drill instructors and those responsible for taking drill parades must frequently practice giving words of command. This practice will give them confidence in giving words of command distinctly and loudly and accustom them to use their voices in the best manner. A word of command to a squad of six men need not be as loud as a command to a battalion.

3. Commands which consist of one word will be preceded by a caution, which may be part of the word itself. The first or cautionary part of word of command will be given deliberately and distinctly. The last or executive part which, as a rule, should consist of only one word or syllable will be given sharply [*e.g.* PLATOON (Slowly)—HALT (sharply)]. A pause, which should be uniform in all words of command, will be made between the cautionary and the executive words of command. When however an order is given which cannot be executed quickly (*e.g.* wheeling which takes some time to carry out) the executive should itself be lengthened. Example—LEFT WH—E— EL.

4. The cautionary and executive words of command given in this pamphlet refer generally to one flank only but the same with certain modifications can be applied to movements to the other flank also.

5. Words of command must be given at all times with precision; indistinct and slovenly words of commands produce slovenly movements and must be avoided.

6. Instructors, when giving words of command, must stand to attention and should not move along with the squad. They should adopt a correct bearing thereby setting an example of alertness to their men.

7. It should always be remembered that a word of command is an order which must be obeyed smartly and properly. Instructors must after giving the word of command observe the drill movements of the squad and check any tendency on the part of men to carry them out in a slovenly manner. For instance, when men are called to attention, or after completion of the movement ordered to stand at ease, absolute steadiness and silence must be insisted upon. There must be no talking by the squad when they are being drilled. It should be the principle to perfect one movement before proceeding with the next. If faults and slack habits are passed over in the early stages, they will, in time, undermine discipline without which no force can train or perform their duties efficiently.

8. When it is desired to resume the position which obtained immediately prior to the last word of command, the command "AS YOU WERE" should be given.

9. The words of command laid down for use in close order drill are not intended for use in movements in the field. They are designed with a view to training the recruit's mind and body to habits of strict obedience to the will of the leader.

10. The following table shows when to give words of command to men on the move during close order drill: —

| Word of Command | Slow Time | Quick Time |
|-------------------------|--|---|
| Halt (Tham) | As the left foot is coming to the ground and level with the right. | As the right foot is coming to the ground . |
| About Turn (Pichhe Mur) | As the right foot is coming to the ground and level with the left. | As the left foot is coming to the ground. |

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| Right Turn (Dahine Mur), Right Incline (Adha Dahine Mur), Right Form (Dahine ban), On the right form—squad (Dahine ko squad Bana) | As the left foot is passing and level with the right. | As the right foot is coming to the ground. |
| Left Turn (Baen Mur), Left Incline (Adha Baeu Mur), Left Form (Baen ban), On the left form squad (Baen ko squad Bana) | As the right foot is passing and level with the left foot | As the left foot is coming to the ground. |
| Mark Time (Qudam) .. | Do.. | Do.. |
| Halt (Tham) When marking time (Qadam Tal) | As the right Knee is just fully raised. | As the right foot is coming to the ground . |
| Forward (When marking time) (Agebarh –Qadam Tal Par) | When the left foot is touching the ground. | When the left foot is coming to the ground. |
| Break into quick time, Quick March (Tej Chaal Men Aa, Tej Chal) | When the left foot is touching the ground. | |
| Break into slow time, Slow March (Dhire Chaal Men Aa, Dhire Chal) | | When the left foot is coming to the ground. |
| Break into double time, Double March (Daur Chaal Men Aa, Daur Chal) | | When the left foot is coming to the ground. |

2—104 BPR&D/74

Section 9

Inspection

1. (i) Whenever a squad parading in three ranks is to be inspected, the ranks will be opened for the inspection and closed on its completion, by the following orders:—

(a) '**OPEN ORDER-MARCH**' (*Khuli line-chal*)

The front rank will take two paces forward, the rear rank two paces to the rear.

(b) 'CLOSE ORDER—MARCH' (Nikkat line-chal)

The ranks will re-form close order, the front rank taking two paces to the rear, the rear rank taking two paces forward, the center rank will remain steady in the position of attention throughout.

(ii) The Instructor will pay attention to the personal cleanliness of the men as well as to the state of their arms, equipment and clothing. A clean and smart turnout must be insisted on at all times. In this respect instructors must set a high standard for young recruits to emulate. Men learn good habits more quickly by example than by any other method.

(iii) Instructors will be trained in methods of inspection so that with practice, they will be able to tell at a glance whether or not each man on parade is correctly turned out.

(iv) A man ordered to adjust his dress, if in the front and middle ranks will take a pace forward; if in the rear rank a pace to his rear. On completion of adjustments the men will regain their original places in the ranks.

(v) The following points become second nature with experience, both in their being noticed at inspection and in their observance by the men.

Full wear must be extracted from clothing and as long as it is serviceable it must be worn. There is however no reason why part worn clothing should not be clean, correctly pressed, and in good repair.

(vi) It is usual to inspect, starting at the right hand man of the front rank, from the head downwards, the front of the rank before the back of it, and the men before their arms. After the inspection of the front rank has been completed the other two ranks will be inspected similarly.

2. General impression—*Is the man clean? Is his uniform clean, well fitting, pressed, and correctly put on? Are his arms clean? Is he standing at the correct position of Attention?*

NOTE :—Before starting to inspect, see that any incorrect positions are put right. The Inspecting Officer should be accompanied by the Platoon or Section Commander who will note anything he is told.

3. Head-Dress

(a) From the front.

(i) Is the hat, safa, or side cap clean and free from sweat and hair grease?

(ii) Is the head gear placed correctly, or is it falling back, or tilted to the side?

(b) From the back.

- (i) Is the head gear clean from the back?
- (ii) Is the hair short? If in doubt, tell the man to take off his cap so as to see if it is of moderate length on top.

Face and neck clean and shaven

NOTE : Check that the men's eyes do not follow the Inspecting Officer.

5. Shirts

(a) From the front.

- (i) The shirt should be well fitted and properly tucked in.
- (ii) Should be well starched, sleeves properly rolled, if wearing long sleeve shirts.
- (iii) Buttons intact and not broken.
- (iv) Designation and badges of rank must be clean and properly sewn on.
- (v) No ends of cotton from the stitching must be allowed to appear.
- (vi) If tunic is worn see that it is properly starched and that the shirt collar and tie are well fitted and clean.
- (vii) See that buttons are clean and placed correctly.

(b) From the back.

- (i) Is the collar clean?
- (ii) Is the back of the shirt properly tucked in and pulled down?

6. Belts

(a) From the front.

- (i) This must be fitted so tight that during marching the weight of the bayonet cannot pull it down one side.
- (ii) The buckle must be central to the front and in line with the clothing buttons. In case of Web belts the brass loops should be at one inch from the buckle.
- (iii) The brass and silver fittings in the belt should be well polished.
- (iv) When wearing a cross belt on Tunic, see that it crosses between the first two buttons from the collar end.

(b) From the back.

- (i) The frog when worn with the belt should be on the left hip—not under the arms or in the small of the back.

- (ii) The belt fittings in the rear should be clean.

7. Hands—Clean, with no tobacco or other stain, nails clean and trimmed.

8. Shorts and Trousers

- (i) See that they are properly fitted specially at the waist.
- (ii) See that they are of the regulation pattern and well starched and creased.

9. Hosetops

- (i) See (hat they are of the approved shade.
- (ii) Are tied immediately below the knees and the upper folds are correctly turned over—approximately 4 inches.
- (iii) See if garters are worn.

10. Putties and Anklets Putties:

- (i) See that they are of the approved shade and pattern.
- (ii) That they are properly tied and the bow of the tape is in line with the ankle and neatly tied.
- (iii) Not more than two folds should be seen when wound round the ankle.

Ankles:

- (i) These must be of a large enough size not to wrinkle, gape at the side, or bulge, and must be so tightly fitted as to remain straight and not turn round at ankle.
- (ii) The webbing and the straps must not be frayed.
- (iii) Buckles if of brass, will be polished back and front.

11. Boots

(a) From the front.

- (i) These must be in a good state of repairs and free from cracks. Laces must be strong and not twisted or knotted. Laces must be done up tight, so as to close the lace holes.
- (ii) Should be neatly polished.
- (iii) The angle of the feet when at Attention is correct (30 degrees). If carrying arms, the toe butt is in line with the toes of the boot.

(b) From the back.

- (i) See that the heels are together and in line.

- (ii) Get some men to lift one foot at a time to see if the soles are in good repairs and properly studded.

12. *Inspection of Arms*

- (i) Arms should be clean and dry for inspection.
- (ii) Slings should be tight and properly fitted.
- (iii) When at the Order see that the sights are down and the safety catch is rear.

CHAPTER III

SQUAD DRILL AT THE HALT

Section 1

10. Formation Of Squads With Interval

A few men will be placed in single rank at arm's length apart; while so formed, they will be termed a squad with intervals.

2. Instruction can best be imparted to a squad in single rank but, if want of space makes it necessary, the squad may consist of two ranks, in which case the men of the rear rank will cover the intervals between the men in the front rank so that in marching they may take their points, as directed in Chapter IV, Section 2.

When recruits have learned to dress as described in Section 5 they will be taught to fall in, and to dress and correct the intervals immediately without any further order.

Care must be taken that the positions of recruits in the ranks are changed frequently, as they must be taught to dress correctly in any position in the squad.

Section 2

11. Attention

"Squad—Attention" (Squad—Savdhan).

Spring up to the following position: — Heels together and in line. Feet turned out at an angle of about 30 degrees. Knees straight. Body erect and carried evenly over the thighs with the shoulders (which should be level and square to the front) down and moderately back—this should bring the chest to the natural forward position without any straining or stiffening. Arms hanging from the shoulders as straight as the natural bend of the arms will allow. Wrists straight, hands closed and slightly clenched, backs of the fingers slightly touching the thigh, thumbs to the front and close to the forefinger, thumb immediately behind the seam of the trousers / shorts. Neck erect. Head balanced evenly on the neck and not poked forward, eyes looking their own height and straight to the front.

The weight of the body should be balanced evenly on both feet and evenly distributed between the forepart of the feet and the heels.

The breathing must not in any way be restricted and no part of the body should be either drawn in or pushed out.

The position is one of readiness in expectation of the word of

command and is also adopted when speaking to or being addressed by a superior officer.

Common faults:

- (i) A strained and exaggerated position , causing breathing to be restricted.
- (ii) Unsteadiness and movement of the eyes;
- (iii) Feet and body not square to the front , heels not closed , one foot more extended than the other ;
- (iv) Arms slightly bent and creeping forward ;
- (v) Backs of the hands to the front , thereby opening the shoulder blades and constricting the chest .

Section 3

12. Standing At Ease

Stand –at –Ease (Vishram)

Carry the left foot about 12 inches to the left so that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet . At the same time carry the hands behind the back and place the back of the right hand in the palm of the left, grasping it lightly with the finger and thumb, and allowing the arms to hang at their full extent. When a recruit falls in he will stand at ease after he has got his dressing.

Common faults:

- (1) Failure to carry the foot off 12 inches ;
- (2) Movement of the right foot with consequent loss of dressing;
- (3) Bending at the waist when picking the foot up.

Section 4

13. Standing Easy:

Stand-Easy (Aram-Se)

The limbs, head, and body may be moved but the man will not move his feet, So that on coming to attention there will be no loss of dressing. Slouching attitudes are not to be permitted . If either foot is moved men are inclined to lose their dressing.

On the caution “ Squad” ect., the correct position of Stand –At –Ease will be Assumed.

Common faults:

- (i) Moving the feet , thereby losing dressing.

- (ii) Slouching and talking.

Section 5

14. Dressing A Squad With Intervals

Dressing in single rank

"Right (or Left)—Dress" (Dahine/Baen—Saj)

Each man, except the man on the named flank, will take a short sharp pace (15 inches) forward, pause, turn his head and eyes to the right/left (for right dress to the right and for left dress to the left) and at the same time extend his right arm, (left if carrying a rifle in Order Arm—Baju Sastra position) with fist clenched, knuckles touching the shoulder of the man on his right (left if carrying a rifle). He will then take up his dressing in line by moving with short quick steps, till he is just able to distinguish the lower part of the face of the third man beyond him. Care must be taken to carry the body backward or forward with the feet, the shoulders being kept perfectly square in their original position. When the squad is correctly dressed, the instructor will give the command—

'Eyes—front" (Samne-Dekh)

The head and eyes will be turned smartly to the front, the arm cut away to the side, and the position of attention resumed.

Common faults:

- (i) Jumping forward with both feet off the ground at once,
- (ii) Feet and shoulders not held square to the front; leaning forward when taking up the dressing.
- (iii) Bending at the waist when moving the feet.
- (iv) Incorrect distance, interval, and covering off.

Section 6

15. Turning And Inclining By Numbers

1. Turning to the Right by numbers—One (Ginti Se Dahine Murna—Dahine Mur—Ek)

Keeping both knees straight and the body erect, turn to the right (90°) on the right heel and left toe, raising the left heel and right toe in doing so.

On the completion of this preliminary movement, the right foot must be flat on the ground and the left heel raised; both knees straight, and the weight of the body, which must be erect, on the right foot.

Two (Do)—Bring the left foot smartly up to the right, lifting it clear six inches from the ground in doing so.

2. Turning to the Left by numbers—One (Ginti Se Baen murna—Baen Mur—Ek).

As for above, except for right read left and *vice versa*.

Two (Do)—Bring the right foot smartly up to the left.

3. *"Inclining by numbers right incline—One"* (*Ginti Se Adha Murna—Adha Dahine Mur—Ek*).
As above but turn through 45 degrees.

"Squad—Two" (Squad—Do)—As above.

NOTE: Point out at once the different aspects of dressing and covering. Each man's right shoulder must be in the center of the next man's back and in the case of center and rear ranks the left shoulder must point to the center of the back of the man originally covered off.

4. ***"Turning About" (by numbers)***

***"Turning About by Numbers, . Squad — One " (Ginti Se Piche Murna—
Squad Piche Mur — Ek)***

Keeping both knees straight and the body erect, turn by the right completely about by 180° pivoting on the right heel and the left toe, raising the right toe and the left heel in doing so but keeping the right held firm on the ground. On the completion of this movement the right foot must be flat on the ground and the left heel raised, both knees straight and the weight of the body (which must be erect) on the right foot. During the first movement of the turn, the hands must be held close to the side and not allowed to wave about.

NOTE: (i) It is a great help to take hole of very lightly in between the thumbs and forefingers a small piece of each trouser leg, along the seam. This will prevent the hands from waving about. This practice must cease after the Squad has been sufficiently practiced.

(ii) It will also be great help to keep both the thighs pressed against each other after completion of this motion, because it will help in keeping the balance of the body.

"Squad—two" (Squad—Do)

Bring the left foot smartly up to the right lifting it clear of the ground in doing so.

Throughout all turns the arms must be kept close to the sides as in the position of attention.

In turning "Judging the time" commands are Right (or Left) or About-Turn, Right (or Left) incline; the movements described above will be carried out on the command turn or Incline, observing the two distinct motions.

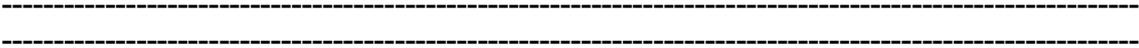
Common faults:

(i) The weight being put on the rear foot; allowing the heel of the forward foot to move over the ground instead of simply pivoting.

(ii) Moving the arms, particularly when bring in the rear foot

(iii) Bending at the waist when bringing in the foot.

(iv) Not making a square turn with the body and shoulder in the first motion.



CHAPTER IV

MARCHING

Section 1

16. Length Of Pace And Time In Marching

1. In slow and in quick time the length of pace is 30 inches; in stepping out 33 inches; in double time 40 inches; in stepping short 21 inches and in the side pace 12 inches.

2. In slow time, 70 paces are taken in one minute. In quick time, 120 paces equal to 100 yards in a minute are taken.

3. During the first few weeks of recruits training, however, recruits when not in marching order, will take 130 paces a minute in quick time.

4. In double time 180 paces, equal to 200 yards a minute are taken.

5. The time for the side pace is the same as for quick time.

6. No recruit or squad of recruit should, unless unavoidable, be taught to march without the constant use of the drum and pace stick.

The drum will first be at the time in which the men are to march, when the squad is halted; then, from time to time, when it is in motion. While the drum is beating at the halt, the men will give their attention to the time; when it ceases, the instructor will put the squad in motion.

The length of the pace in marching will be corrected with the pace stick, the accuracy of which should occasionally be tested by measurement.

7. Distances of 100 yards and 200 yards will be marked on the drill ground, and men will be practiced in keeping correct time and length of pace.

Section 2

17. Position In Marching

1. In marching, the recruit will maintain the position of the head and body as directed in Chap. III Sec. 2. He must be well balanced. In slow time his arms and hand must be kept steady by his sides. In quick time the arms, which should be as straight as their natural bend will allow, should swing naturally from the shoulder, hands reaching as high as the waist belt in front and rear. Hands should be kept closed but not clenched, thumbs always to the front.

2. It will be found difficult initially when teaching drill to recruits to

obtain correct swinging of the arms. It is, therefore, of value when instructing recruits slightly to accentuate the height to which the arms should swing in marching. As training progresses, this tendency slightly to exaggerate the swinging of the arms should be corrected, until the hands reach only as high as the waist belt in front and rear. It will be found that if emphasis is placed in instruction on swinging the arms correctly and straight to the rear, the swing to the front develops automatically in the correct manner.

3. The legs should be swung forward freely and naturally from the hip joints, each leg as it swings forward being bent sufficiently at the knee to enable the foot to clear the ground. The foot should be carried straight to the front, and, without being drawn back, placed upon the ground with the knee straight, but so as not to jerk the body.

Any tendency to turn the toes outwards or inwards or both will be checked.

4. Although several recruits may be drilled together in a squad with intervals, they must act independently, precisely as if they were being instructed singly. They will thus learn to march in dressing and to take a correct pace, both as regards length and time, without reference to the other men of the squad.

5. Before the squad is put in motion the instructor will take care that each man is square to the front and in dressing with the remainder. The recruit will be taught to take a point straight to his front, by fixing his eyes upon some distant object, and when observing some nearer point in the same, straight line. The same procedure will be followed by the men on the named flank.

Section 3

18. Marching In Quick And Slow Time

1. The Slow March

Slow time is used to teach movement on the march before demanding them in quick time. It is taught by means of "balancing step" as follows:

Slow March—by number—One (Dhīre chal Gintise—EK)

Shoot the left foot forward 15 inches toe turned over very slightly and pointing towards the ground but just clear of it; upper part of the body erect; arms still to the sides; weight of the body on the right leg.

Squad—two: (Squad Do)

Complete the pace of thirty inches, the toes touching the ground

first, bring the weight of the body on left leg, the right leg being to the rear and very slightly bent so as to bring the toes just clear of the ground.

Squad—Forward: (Squad Agebarh)

Complete the pace with the right foot as described for the left foot, swinging the leg forward smoothly, and without checking when the leg is straightened out in front of the body. This movement may be continued until the squad has got its balance; and until instead of "Forward" the command "Squad-Halt" is given .

During recruit training squad drill should be frequently practiced in slow time only. The executive words of command will be Slow-March. The men will step off and march as described for Quick-March, but in slow time, and keeping the arms and hands steady at the sides, thumbs to the front. Each leg will be brought forward in one even motion and will be straightened as it comes to the front with the toes pointed downwards and placed on the ground before the heel.

It is difficult to over-estimate the training value to the policeman, especially the recruit, of well executed drill in Slow Time, since it ensures a correct grounding in drill and prevents the development of basic errors and faults which often go unchecked in quick time. Over and above its value in ensuring a correct foundation-for drill, drill in Slow Time teaches the policeman balance and control of his body and is of great value in developing correct bearing and carriage. The recruit should not be allowed to drill in quick time until he has perfected the various movements in slow time—only then can the instructors be certain that he is building on a firm foundation.

Slow March in judging time

Squad Age Badhega Dahinese—Dhire-Chal

Shoot the left foot forward by 15 inches and maintaining the correct pause complete the pace of 30 inches and touch the ground. The moment left foot touches the ground shoot the right foot forward by 15 inches. Repeat these motions alternatively keeping the required paused after taking the left / right foot 15 inches forward.

Halt: (Tham): While practicing slow march by number the command for halt will be given after the motions of "Squad-two" is over i.e. instead of "Squad-One" the command "Squad-Halt (Squad-Tham)" is given.

While practicing slow march by judging the time the command "Squad-Halt (Squad-Tham)" will be given when the left foot is coming to the ground and is level with the right. On this command, complete the pace of 30 inches by the left *foot* taking the correct pause and then the moment left foot touches the ground,

shoot the right foot forward and bring it on the ground in line with the left in double time, so as to assume the position of attention.

2. The Quick March

Quick March-by number-one (Tez chal-GintiseEk)

Shoot the left foot forward 30 inches; toe fumed upward, heel touching firmly on the ground; upper part of the body erect; weight of the body equally on both the legs, heel of the right leg raised but the toe touching the ground; position of the hand as described in section 2 above (i.e. right hand forward and left hand backward).

Squad-two) (Squad-Do)

Push the body forward and simultaneously take the right foot forward by slightly bending the right knee and a full pace of 30 inches; right heel touching the ground and toe ratted: left heel raised and toe touching the ground; weight of the body on both legs While doing this motion the hands should also be interchanged simultaneously (i.e. left hand taken forward and the right hand brought backward).

NOTE : To continue these motions by numbers, the words of command will be "*Squad One (Squad-Ek)*" and "*Squad Two (Squad-Do)*" to bring the left foot and right foot forward respectively. These movements may be continued until the word of command

"Squad-Hall (Squad-Tham)" is given

"Quick March Judging time "

"Squad will advance by the right-Quick March (SquadAge Badhega Dahinese TezChai)"

The Squad will step off together with the left foot, taking it 30 inches forward in one simple motion and then touching the ground by the heel. After this, the same movement may be done for the right foot and then alternatively the left and right. Simultaneously the hand should be swung forward and backward as described in para 18-2 above.

3. The Halt : —The word of command "*Squad-Halt (Squad-Tham)*" will be given when the right foot touches the ground. After that, a pace of 30 inches is completed with the left foot and then the right foot brought up in line with the left. At the same time the right and left hands will be cut smartly to the sides.

Common faults

(a) Marching in Slow time:

- (i) Heels touching the ground first,
- (ii) Elbows away from the sides,
- (iii) Hands gripped to the leg and therefore moving at each pace.
- (iv) Not keeping the weight of the body on the rear foot, thereby loosing balance.

- (v) Not shooting the rear foot to a distance of 15 inches forward very smartly the moment the front foot touches the ground.

(b) *Marching in Quick time:*

- (i) Not marching on the heels.
- (ii) At all times unequal arm swinging, loss of the rhythm, lack of dressing and covering, stiffening the legs too much and scraping the ground when feet move forward.
- (iii) Bending the arms at the elbow.

(c) *Halting (Both slow and quick time):*

- (i) Bending the front foot from the knee or and bending from the waist,
- (ii) Bending the arms,
- (iii) Looking down,
- (iv) Swaying about immediately after the halt .

4. *Stepping Out*

Step—Out (Lamba Qadam)

The moving foot will complete its pace, and the man will lengthen the pace by three inches, leaning forward a little, but without altering the time. This step is used when a slight increase of speed without an alteration of time is required. On the command Quick (or Slow) March the normal length of pace will be resumed.

5. *Stepping Short*

Step—Short (Chhota Qadam)

The foot advancing will complete its pace, after which the pace will be shortened by nine inches until the command Quick (or Slow) March is given, when the normal length of pace will be resumed.

6. *Marking Time Mark—Time (Qadam Tal)*

The foot then advancing will complete its pace, after which the time will be continued, without advancing, by raising each foot alternately about six inches keeping the foot almost parallel with the ground (this can be achieved by pressing the toe downward), the knee raised to the front, the arms steady at the sides, and the body steady. On the command "Forward*", the quick pace at which the men were moving will be resumed.

In slow time the feet should be raised twelve inches when marking time, the ball of the foot being immediately below the point of the knee, toes pointing downwards.

Common faults :-

- (i) Not remaining stationary on the same ground with consequent loss of dressing or interval.
- (ii) Movement of the body shoulders or arms.
- (iii) Looking down.
- (iv) Increasing the time above that of marching.
- (v) A tendency to lean forward.
- (vi) Raising the foot so that it is too far back instead of with the toe under the point of the knee.

Section 4

19. Paces Forward And To The Rear

... Paces Forward/Step back March (Qadam Age/Pichhe chal)

Forward / Step Back the named number of paces of 30 inches straight to the front/rear commencing with the left foot and keeping the arms still by the sides.

The maximum number of paces that the man will be ordered to step forward or to the rear will be four.

Common faults :

- (i) Hurrying the movement so that an incorrect length of pace is taken.
- (ii) Bending the leg that is taking the step forward, and "hopping", with both feet off the ground.
- (iii) Bending at the waist.

Section 5

20. Changing Step In Slow And Quick Time

NOTE :- This should be taught by numbers, starting with Slow Time.

“ Changing step by numbers, Left foot leading”

- 1. "Change step—One" (Qadam-Badal-Ek)** [given as the right foot reaches die ground]. Complete the pace with the left foot so that the left foot is flat on the ground and 30 .inches in front of the right foot.
- 2. "Squad—Two" (Squad-Do)** Bring theright foot forward so that the foot is placed flat on the ground with the hollow in the heel of the left foot.
- 3. "Squad— Three" (Squad-Teen)** Shoot the left foot forward placing the foot flat on the ground 30 inches in front of the right foot.
- 4.** Changing step with the right foot leading can be taught in a smaller manner. except that for "left" read "right" in each case.

5. Having taught the movements by numbers the squad carry on without interruption. The first and third movements are done at the rate of marching. The second movement is done in double that time. The word of command is given on alternate and successive feet.

6. Changing step in quick time is taught by numbers in a similar way and the words of command and movements are identical.

7. Changing step marking time — The word of command is given on alternate and successive feet. If "Change" is given on the left foot, and "Step" on the right foot, two beats will be made with the left foot in the same time as the marching, after which normal marking time will be resumed. If given on the opposite foot, two beats will be made with the right foot.

The movements are the same in slow and quick time.

Common faults

- (a) When *marching*
 - (i) Swinging the shoulders.
 - (ii) Not taking a full pace for the third movement
- (b) *When marking time*
 - (i) Body rolling.
 - (ii) Increasing the rate of marching.

Section 6

21. Marching In Double Time

1. The Double March

Squad will Advance, Dnnhle March (Squad Age Harhega-Daur Ke-chal)

Step off with the left foot and double on the toes with easy swinging strides, inclining the body slightly forward. But maintaining its correct carriage. The feet must be picked up cleanly from the ground at each pace, and the thigh, knee, and ankle joints must all work freely and without stiffness. The whole body should be carried forward by a thrust from the rear foot without unnecessary effort. The heels must not be raised towards the seat, but the foot carried straight to the front and the toes placed lightly on the ground. The arms should swing easily from the shoulders and should be bent at the elbow, the forearm forming an angle of about 135 degrees with the upper arm (*i.e.* midway between a straight arm and a right angle at the elbow), fists slightly clenched, backs of the hands outwards, and the arms swung sufficiently clear of the body to allow full freedom for the chest. The shoulders should be kept steady and square to the front and the head erect. The length of pace will be 40 inches and the rate of marching 180 paces in a minute.

Common faults:

- (i) Swinging the shoulders.

- (ii) Looking down
- (iii) Stepping too long at the head of the squad thus causing straggling in rear.
- (iv) Running on the heels and loss of dressing, distance and interval.
- (v) Hurrying the rate of marching.

2. Marking Time

As for quick time, except that the ball of the foot only is put to the ground and the arms are kept to the side in the bent position. The rate of double marching is maintained.

3. Halting

As for quick time, at the same time cutting the arms to the side. The word of command "*Halt*" (*Tham*) is given in both cases, as the right foot touches the ground, after which three more paces are taken starting from the left foot and halt is achieved on the fourth pace on the right foot. These three paces are required to check the more rapid movement of the body before gaining the position of attention. It is, however, normal to break into quick time before ordering "*Halt*" from double time.

Common faults:

- (i) Hoping with both feet off the ground at once,
- (ii) Loss of precision in halting.

Section 7

22. Breaking Into Slow, Quick And Double Time

1. Breaking into quick time from slow time.

"*Break into quick time quick march*", (*Tej Chal Men As. Tej Chal*). The executive words of command are given on successive paces, "*Quick*" as the left foot reaches the ground. "*March*" as the right foot reaches the ground. Swing the left leg and right arm forward, and the left arm to the rear in the correct rate of marching; continue marching in quick time.

Common faults :

- (i) Making the first pace too hurriedly thereby failing to gain correct rhythm at the start
- (ii) Stamping the left foot on the ground in the first pace, thereby losing height.
- (iii) Failing to swing the left arm to the rear,
- (iv) Left foot not taking 30 inches forward.

2. Breaking into slow time from quick time

The words of command will be "*Break into slow time, slow march*", (*Dhire*

Chal Men As, Dhire Chal). The change into slow time will be done without pause. The executive word of command "March" is given as the left foot is level with and passing the right. On this command the right foot is taken to the front fully 30 inches in the usual speed. This movement will act as a check pace after which the left foot is taken to the front 15 inches and then another 15 inches as per slow march (Dhire chal). Also when the right foot (check pace) come to the ground both the hands are cut sharply to the sides.

Common faults :

- (i) Swinging the right shoulder to the rear,
- (ii) Allowing the body to lean backwards.
- (iii) Failure to cut the arms into the side sharply enough.

3. Breaking into double time from quick time

"Break into double time, double March" (Daur Chaal Men Aa, Daiir Ke Chal). The executive word of command 'March' (*Chal*) is given as the left foot reaches the ground. After this a full pace of 30 inches is taken by the right foot and then break into double time swinging the leg forward at the correct rate of marching, *i.e.* 180 paces to the minute; at the same time bend the arms.

Common faults :

- (i) Immediate relaxation of control and loss of rhythm.
- (ii) Allowing the head to roll forward.

4. Breaking into quick time from double time

"Break into quick time, quick—march". (Tej Chaal Men Aa, Tej Chal). The executing words of command— "*Quick March*" are given on successive paces, "*Quick*" as the left foot reaches the ground and "*March*" as the right foot reaches the ground.

Complete two more paces in double time, checking the pace to 30 inches and then break automatically into quick time.

Common faults:

Failure to march correctly at once.

Section 8

23. The Side Pace

1. The side pace (12 inches) is used to move the squad up to twelve paces to a flank—(If greater than twelve paces the squad should be "turned" and moved).

The exact number of paces, up to four, can be specified, when the squad will halt automatically; or the squad will continue moving until halted.

It is usual to teach the side pace to the left first as a direct "follow on" from the stand at ease.

2. "*.....paces left close — march* " (*Qadam Baen Baju — Chal*) Carry the left foot off 12 inches to the left (as for the stand at ease), instantly closing the right foot to it in a similar manner and in double time, thus completing the pace. Continue the movement until the specified number of paces has been completed. Except for the movement of the feet the correct position of attention will be maintained.
3. "*Left close — march* " (*Baen Baju — Chal*), Number of paces not being specified, continue the movement until halted or eight paces completed.
4. "*Squad—halt*" (*Squad—Tham*) The word of command will be given
as the heels are together. The squad will complete one more pace and remain steady.

Common faults:

- (i) Uneven pace, loss of covering and dressing
- (ii) Failure to close the heels at each pace,
- (iii) A tendency to "hop" instead of bringing the right foot in sharply as the left foot touches the ground.

Section 9

24. Turning When On The March

1. Turnings on the march are first taught in slow time. They are taught by numbers.
2. Throughout all turnings on the march, the correct position of marching must be maintained. The turn must be made squarely to the new direction and covering, dressing, distance, and interval must be corrected by each individual member of the squad immediately after turning.
- 3 — 104 BPR & D / 74

(a) Right (or Left)—Turn. [Dahine (ya Baen)—Mur]

On the command *Right (or Left)—Turn*, the left (or right) foot will be brought forward until it is just in front of the right (or left) foot, and each man will then turn smartly in the required direction, using his left (or right) foot as a pivot, and advance a full pace of 30 inches in the new direction with the right (or left) foot.

The turn to the right must be made off the left foot and to the left off the right foot.

(b) About-Turn. (Pichhe Mur)

Complete the pace with the right foot, then commence the turn with the left foot, the turn being completed in three beats of the time in which the squad is marching. Having completed the turn about, the squad will at once move forward, the fourth pace being a full one and taken with the right foot. While in quick march, after getting the orders *About-Turn*.

(Pichhe Mur) when the right foot comes to the ground both the arms should be cut sharply to the sides and kept there until the fourth pace *i.e.* the right foot comes forward on which the left hand should come smartly forward and the right hand backward.

In the case of a Squad with a blank file marching in line, the blank file will mark time two paces on the word "*About*", thus gaining his position in the new front rank before the turn is completed. Guides should set in a similar manner,

(c) Right (or Left) Incline. [*Adha Dahine (ya Baen) Mur*]

On the command "incline", take a half turn in the required direction in the same way as described in sub para (a) above.

(d) Turnings and changes on the march should always be preceded by a cautionary word of command, e.g. Move to the right (*Dhaine chalega*)—The Squad will advance (*Squad Age Badhega*) Break into slow time (*Dhire Chal men Aa*) Diagonal march, (*Adha Murega*) etc.

Common faults:

- (i) Not making a full and square turn with head and shoulders.
 - (ii) Allowing the hands and arms to swing away from the position of attention.
-

CHAPTER V

SALUTING WITHOUT ARMS

Instructors will impress upon recruits the importance of Salute. It is a method of greeting a superior, not a servile act. It is an outward sign of the inward spirit of discipline and respect for superiors. The general tone and feeling in a Force is indicated as much by the manner in which the men salute and the officers return the salute as by any other action.

A salute is, in fact, the normal greeting between comrades in arms. That a salute is given when a subordinate meets an officer is a basic matter of discipline. That the salute is properly and smartly given is a matter of training. Failure to salute shows disrespect, idleness and a low standard of discipline. Failure by an officer in uniform to insist on being saluted is a breach of discipline.

Section 1

25. Saluting At The Halt

1. This is a basic lesson but must often be reverted to with trained men, to correct any bad habits which have been picked up. To permit free movement, this is best practiced with the squad in open order and inclined diagonally.

2. Saluting to the Front

(i) By Numbers.

"Salute to the Front by Number—One", (*Ginti Se Samane Siloot—Ek*). The Right arm is kept straight and raised sideways until it is horizontal, palm of the hand to front, fingers extended, thumb close to the forefinger.

"Two (Do) Keeping the upper arm still and the hand and wrist straight bend the elbow until the forefinger tip of right hand is one inch above the right eye. Points to note are:

(a) Upper arm horizontal and at right angles to the side; forearm, wrist and fingers all in one straight line.

(b) Palm of the hand vertical and wrist not bending.

"Squad—Three" (*Squad Teen*) To return to the position of attention hand is cut the shortest way to the side by dropping the elbow towards front. The fingers are curled up on the way down.

(ii) Judging the time.

When judging the time, the right hand will be brought smartly with a motion to the head, as taught by Numbers. The hand will remain

at the position of the salute for a regulation pause. The words of command will be: "*Salute to the Front—Salute*" *Samne siloot—Silooi*).

Common faults

In coming up to the salute:

- (i) Leaning to the left, straining the muscles and leaning backwards.
- (ii) Elbow forward; forearm, wrist and fingers not in a straight line,
- (iii) Hand too high or too far over towards the center of the forehead; hand tilted forward; fingers not together; moving of the left arm; pushing the head forward.

In cutting the hand away:

- (iv) Dropping the hand before the elbow,
- (v) Not straightening the arm and therefore not resuming a proper position of attention; moving the left hand when cutting the right arm away.

In general the most common fault in saluting to the front is that the movement is started before the man has halted, stopped speaking, etc., and that he starts speaking before the movement has been properly completed.

3. Salute to the flank

"Salute to the Right—Salute". (Dahine Siloot—Siloot) This is best taught from the correct position of the salute to the front. Get the recruit to turn his head and eyes square off to the right and, without upsetting the position of the right arm, wrist or hand, to shift the hand so that the right eye can just look along the palm of the hand. The recruit should look along his own height or into the eyes of the officer he is saluting. This must be practised until the movements of the head, eyes and hands become simultaneous.

Common faults:

- (i) Leaning forward, looking along the back of the hand or not looking the officer squarely in the face,
- (ii) Hand too high.
- (iii) Left shoulder allowed to come forward,
- (iv) Right elbow allowed to come Forward and drop or fall to the rear.
- (v) Not looking square off to the flank,
- (vi) Raising the wrist.

4. Salute to the Left—Salute", (Baen Siloot—Siloot) taught as above head and eyes turned smartly to the left, the right hand, wrist and arm being pushed further over to the left to the correct position above the right eye.

Common faults:

- (i) Turning the shoulder to the left and allowing the right elbow to drop forward.

- (ii) Not allowing the right hand to move over to its correct position,
- (iii) Dropping the wrist.

Section 2

26. Saluting on the March

1. Saluting on the march may be to a flank or to the front and may be done in quick or slow time.
2. "*Salute to the right (left)—Salute*" (*Dahine/Baen ko Siloot—Squad Siloot*) Given as the left foot comes to the ground. Come up to the salute the next time the left foot touches the ground and cut the hand down after the sixth pace counted from the first right foot after the salute.

3. When passing an officer

when a subordinate passes an officer, he will salute on the third pace before reaching him, and lower the hand on the third pace after passing him. During the salute the man will look the officer full in the face.

NOTE: (i) Recruits will be practiced in marching two or three together, saluting "points" being placed on either side. When several men are together, the man nearest the "point" will give the time.

(ii) They should be practiced in saluting "points" on the move as well as fixed saluting "points".

Common faults:

"In addition to the faults already mentioned, there is a tendency to swing the shoulders and to stray from the direction of marching in the direction of the salute. This latter fault is corrected in instruction by getting an instructor to act as a guide to the squad.

4. Salute to the Front

"Salute to the front—Salute", (Samne Siloot—Siloot) The word of command is given as for the "*Halt*" i.e. when the left-foot comes to the ground in slow march and the right foot comes to the ground in quick march: The squad will halt, salute to the front, wait for a regulation pause, salute to the front again, pause, turn about, pause and lead off in quick or slow-time as the case may be.

NOTE: (i) This is the drill movement to teach how to approach an officer.

(ii) Instructors will insist on the correct counting of the regulation pause.

(iii) During initial training saluting to the front may be practiced in slow time but when actually reporting to a superior officer it must be done in quick march.

(5) Salute to the Front with a message

"Salute to the front with a message—Squad Salute" (Sandesh Ke sath

Samneko Silool—Squad—Siloot) The words of command will be given exactly as tor para 4 above. The action will also done as described in Para 4 above except that after the first salute the person reporting should take one step forward, handover the message and then take one step back walk, before saluting for the second time

Section 3

27. Dismissing without Arms

"Line Tor" when the squad is to be given a short break after which they are required to re-form, the word of command 'Line Tor' is given.

1. On the word of command 'Line Tor', the squad will turn to the right and after a pause equal to two beats in quick time they will break ranks and leave the place. No salute is required to be given for this movement.

2. "Swasthan" - This word of command is given when the squad has to be dismissed from a hall or a classroom.

On the word of command 'Swasthan' the class will sit steady with both, their hands in a straight position on their knees. Thereafter they will stand and leave the place. No salute is required to be given

3. "Visarjan (Dismiss)" - This word of command is given when the squad is to be dismissed and they are not required to reform.

On the word of command 'Visarjan' The squad will turn to the right, salute (the head and eyes will be turned towards the officer) and after a pause equal to two beats in quick time, - break rank, and leave the parade ground in quick time.

Common faults:

There is a tendency to regard 'Dismiss' as the "last of a bad business". This is a wrong attitude and will be checked at once. The 'Dismiss' is a complement to the senior rank on parade and will be made as such. Squad Instructors will at all times watch for a good turn and check the salute whether after a drill or any other parade.

CHAPTER VI

CANE DRILL

28. INTRODUCTION

The Baton/Cane is a part of uniform which is normally used on special occasions by other ranks and can be carried by officers of the rank of Sub Inspectors and above in the normal course of duties.

In the case of NCOs and Constable, Cane can be carried when they are deployed for regimental duties like RP duties, Cane Orderlies and Stick Orderlies.

Section 1

29. Difference between Baton and Cane

The Baton is of 60 cms length and circumference of approximately 6 cms with two silver-plated metal caps of length of 4 cms. at both ends with insignia of the organization at the top end welded to the metal cap.

The Cane has a circular knob on the top part with the insignia embossed on it. There is a metal cap at the bottom of the Cane. The Cane may be of the following types:

(a) Whip Cane - This is normally of length between 24" to 27". This Cane does not have a metal knob but a leather handle at the top with 2 flaps at the bottom of the Cane. This is used by the Equitation Wing only.

(b) Normal Cane - This Cane varies in length from 27" to 30" having circular knob on the top end with the insignia of the organization embossed on it and a metal cap at the bottom of the cane.

(c) Regimental Cane - This is normally of length between 30" and 33", having a metal circular knob at the top and a metal cap at the bottom. This is thicker than the normal cane and is decorated with silver chains etc. This is normally used by Stick Orderlies for regimental duties or for piloting VIPs during ceremonial parades.

The following should be avoided by a person carrying a Cane:

- (1) Swinging the Cane in the hand.
- (2) Hitting the Cane-on the side of the pads.
- (3) Pointing at some one with the Cane.
- (4) Using the Cane for drawing sketches, etc. on the ground.

Section 2

30. Position of Cane

1. Position of cane when at attention

The cane will be held firmly in the right hand in a perpendicular position close to the right side of the body, first joint of the forefinger of the right hand underneath knob of cane and pointing towards the thigh; thumb across the front of the cane, the remaining three fingers grasping the cane.

2. Position of cane when standing at ease

The back of the right hand will be in the palm of the left, the cane to be held between the right arm and the body, ferrule pointing obliquely upwards and to the right front.

3. Position of cane when on the march

On the command "*QUICK MARCH*", step off as explained in quick march without cane. As the left foot comes to the ground for the first time, both hands will be brought smartly to the center of the cane (one movement), the cane being kept perpendicular to the right side. As the left foot comes to the ground the second time, the left hand will be cut smartly away to the side, the cane will be carried smartly to the right side and parallel with the ground, balanced between the thumb and first two fingers of the right hand, ferrule to the front. The arms to be swung as in marching without cane; the cane being kept parallel to the ground throughout the swing.

The cane is now in the position of the trail. If the squad is moving in file, the cane will be carried as for the position of attention.

4. Halting

On receiving the command "*HALT*" canes will be kept at the trail. After a slight pause, canes will then be brought to the position of attention in two movements, viz. :—

- (a) The cane will be seized with the left hand at the center and brought to a perpendicular position at the right side. Simultaneously, the right hand will be moved to the knob of the cane as in the position of attention.
- (b) The left hand will then be cut away smartly to the left side.

5. Turning About

When halted, the cane is kept in the position of attention when the squad is turned about.

On the march, on the first movement of the about turn (left foot), the cane will be brought smartly to a perpendicular position in front of the right shoulder, upper part of the cane close to the side, fore-arm horizontal, hand in line with the waist belt. On the First pace after the turn (Right foot), the cane will be brought to the trail.

Section 3

31. Saluting With Cane

1. *Saluting the Front with the Cane*

This procedure is adopted when delivering messages, written or verbal or addressing an officer.

2. *"Salute to the Front Squad—Salute" (Sumne KoSiloot-SquadSiloot)*

The Command "SALUTE" will be given as the right foot comes to the ground (as for halt). The squad will halt, judge a- pause equal to two paces in quick time, place the cane smartly under the left arm ferrule to the rear, cut the right hand smartly to side, salute; take one step forward, transfer the written message, if any, to the right hand and deliver to the officer, take one step back, salute again, turn about keeping cane under left arm, and march off in quick time. (If there is no message or anything, to be transferred and only verbal communication is to be made it is not necessary to take one step forward after the first salute.) Pause equal to two beats in quick time should be observed between each separate movement. As the left foot comes to the ground for the first time, seize the cane with the right hand as near the center as possible with the back of the hand uppermost, thumb underneath. On the left coming to the ground again, bring the cane smartly to the trail.

3. *Saluting to the Right (or Left) with the cane on the move*

"SALUTE TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) SQUAD-SALUTE"

[Dahine (Ya Baen) Ko siloot—Squad Siloot]

The Command "SALUTE" is given as the left foot is coming to the ground. As the left foot comes to the ground the first time after the word "SALUTE" place the cane smartly under the left arm, ferrule to the rear. Next time the left foot comes to the ground (4th pace) cut the right hand smartly away to the side and commence the salute on the 6th pace, turning the head in the direction given. On the 12th pace (left foot) cut the right hand smartly away to the side, turning the head to the front. On left foot coming to the ground (14th pace) seize the cane with the right hand as near the centre as possible, back of the hand upper-most, thumb underneath. On the left foot coming to the ground (16th pace) bring the cane smartly to the right side at the trail. "the left arm is not to be swung during the salute. All cane movements are carried out on the beat of the left foot.

Section 4

32. *Dismissing With the Cane*

"SQUAD, DISMISS" (Squad Visarjan)

The squad will turn to the right, place the cane under the left arm, ferrule to the rear, the right hand to the side, salute (Without turning the head or eyes) and break off in quick time. Moments will be carried out at the same pace as in quick time, the hand being cut away to the side on the fourth pace. If there is no officer present on

the parade the squad will not salute (While turning to the right the cane should be kept in the position of attention).

NOTE:—If an officer carrying a cane has to keep the cane underneath the left arm during inspection or conversation with other officers, he would hold the cane with the left hand fingers together and on the left, extending the slanting upwards, thumb straight on right. The cane would thus rest on the outside of the hand between the thumb and the forefinger.

Section 5

33. Drill Movements with Marching with the Baton/Cane

(a) *Bagai Cane from Buzu Cane*

From the Savdhan position the Cane / Baton is to be taken to underneath the armpit with the right hand. The right hand will be cut sharply and brought to the side and simultaneously the left hand will be taken up to hold the head of the Cane fingers together and on the left extending and slanting upwards, thumb straight and on right. The Cane would then rest on the outside of the hand between the thumb and the forefinger.

(b) *Saluting with the Cane in Bagal Cant; position*

In this position, while saluting, the left hand will come down as the right hand toes up for the salute. As soon as the salute is complete and the right hand is brought down sharply, the left hand will take up its original position on the Cane/Baton.

(c) *Bazu Cane from Bagal Cane* The right hand will move up sharply to take up the position where the Cane was being held by the left brought down sharply to the side.

With the help of the right hand the Cane is to be pulled out from under the left arm and brought to Bagal Cane.

(d) *Bagal Cane from To I Cane*

From the word of command Bagal Cane the right hand will be brought sharply to underneath left hand keeping the knuckles upwards.

The right hand is brought down sharply to the side and simultaneously the left hand will hold the Cane with fingers together and on the left extending and slanting upwards, thumbs straight and on right. The Cane would then rest on the outside of the hand between the thumb and forefinger.

(c) *Tol Cane form Bagal Cane*

The right hand is brought sharply to hold the Cane from the center with the knuckles facing upwards and the elbow kept straight across the chest.

The right hand is brought down sharply to Tol Cane position.

CHAPTER VII

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS ON SALUTING

Section 1

34. Saluting When Without Head-dress And When Wearing Plain Clothes etc.

This Section covers the case of an individual policeman (including upper subordinates in reference to gazetted police officer) who passes an officer, is spoken to by an officer, or who is passed by an officer when the individual either has no head-dress, or is dressed in plain clothes. As part of a recruit's training, the movements will be explained, demonstrated and practiced on the square.

1. *Without head-dress*

At all times when without head-dress

- (a) When passing an officer, will cut his hands to his sides and turn his head and eyes to the flank on the left foot and so remain for six paces, after which he will turn his head to the front.
- (b) When spoken to by an officer, will stand to attention.
- (c) When passed by an officer, will stand to attention.

2. *When in plain clothes*

A policeman, if wearing a western head-dress will remove his headdress well, clear off the head and look the officer in the eye. In the case of Indian head-dress he would not remove it, but would smartly turn his head in the direction of the officer after cutting his arms to the sides. He will to attention if speaking to or spoken to by the officer.

3. *When sitting*

A policeman, if sitting when an officer approaches will stand to facing the officer and salute with the hand. If two or more men are or standing about, the senior officer, N.C.O. or oldest policemen face the officer, call the whole to attention, and alone will salute.

4. *When addressing or delivering a message to an officer*

A policeman will march smartly towards the officer in quick time, halt two paces from him, salute, address the officer or deliver his message (by going a step forward and again stepping back after delivering the message), salute again, turn about and march off in quick time

Common faults:

- (i) Failure to pay the necessary compliment,
- (ii) Saluting with no hat or headdress on.

Section 2

35. Miscellaneous

NATIONAL ANTHEM

1. The "National Salute" will be given to:—
 - (a) President of the Republic of India;
 - (b) Governors within their own States.

2. Other dignitaries entitled to Salute on ceremonial occasions will be given the "General Salute".

3. The National Anthem (*JANA GANA MANA*) will be played for the following:
 - (a) President of the Republic of India;
 - (b) Governors within their own States;
 - (c) Ceremonials, functions, parades—whether any of the personages mentioned in 1(a) and 1(b) above is present or not—on the 15th August and 26th January.

4. The 'National Anthem' can also be played for the Prime Minister of India on special occasions with the prior approval of the State Government.

5. (a) Whenever the 'National Anthem' is played, all ranks in uniform will stand at attention; officers, both gazetted and non-gazetted including Under Officers, saluting.
 - (b) When 'National Anthem' is played on a ceremonial parade, all ranks in uniform, not under the order of the O.C. Parade, will stand at attention; as in 5(a), all officers and under officers saluting Officers in attendance on the chief dignitary taking the salute at the ceremonial parade will only come to attention and will not salute when the "National Anthem" is played
 - (c) If in plain clothes all ranks will stand to attention and persons wearing western head-dress will take off their head-dress. All officers or under officers commanding a party on the move will halt the party which will remain at the slope or attention; the officer or under officer will salute. If carrying a drawn sword, the officer will remain at the carry. Sentries will slope arms.

6. Acknowledging salutes

Officers will receive and return a salute with the courtesy it

deserves. When two or more officers are together, the senior will return the salute.

7. Left Hand salute

Where through physical incapacity, a salute with the right hand is impossible, the salute will be given with the left hand.

8. Police and Military Funerals.

Officers and men passing a Police or military funeral will salute the bier by giving eyes right or left. The senior in charge of the party will salute.

9. When riding a horse

An officer riding without arms will salute with the right hand. A policeman mounted without arms will salute as follows:

(a) When riding with both hands on the reins, will give an eye right or left without moving his hands.

(b) When holding the reins in one hand only, will drop the right hand to the full extent of the arm behind the right thigh, fingers half closed, back of the hand to the right, and give an eye right or left.

10. When Driving a Mechanical Vehicle (including bicycle)

The rider of a bicycle (pedal or motor) or driver of a mechanical vehicle will not salute when the vehicle is in motion, owing to the danger of taking the eyes off the road.

When the vehicle is stationary, he will salute by giving an eye right or left but will not remove his hands from the handlebar or steering wheel.

When seated on or in a horse or mechanical vehicle as a passenger, Officers will pay compliments by saluting with the right hand, if possible. Otherwise they will follow the instructions laid down for dismounted men. A driver will sit to attention and, if facing the direction in which the Vehicle is moving, will salute by giving an eye right or left. If seated facing to any other direction, he will look straight to his own front.

CHAPTER VIII

DRILL IN THREE RANKS AT THE HALT

The following chapter deals with the drilling of a platoon in Three Ranks. The instructions are equally of use for any smaller body of men. In practice, however, with a squad of recruits, it is best to have the men in a single rank, so that they can all see the Instructor clearly, till they have mastered the elements. They can then drill in two ranks, and finally in three ranks.

Section 1

36. Falling In A Squad/Platoon

1. The correct way to "fall in" a squad or a platoon is for the instructor to call "Right marker". The "Right Marker" (Right hand man of the front rank—or any man detailed) marches up to the instructor, and faces him standing to attention (or at the slope if armed). The instructor then orders the man to stand at ease and gives the command.

2. Squad/Platoon fall in. (Squad/Platoon Line Ban)

The men then march smartly to the left of the marker and fall in, in three ranks and stand at ease.

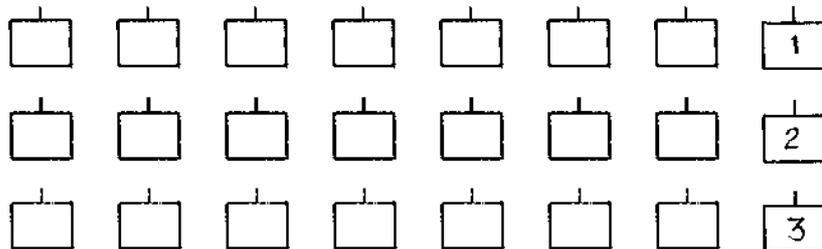


Diagram 1

3. The lateral interval between each man is the length of his outstretched arm with the fist closed; the distance between ranks, one pace (30 inches). The men must pick up their dressing from the right as they fall in and cover off from front to rear.

NOTE: Position of Section Commanders. In an organized platoon each of the three ranks forms a section, and the section commander falls in on the right of his section. Where sections are organized into subsections, the sub-section commanders are in the ranks on the right of their sub-sections.

Section 2

37. Blank File (Khali File)

1. If the total number of men is not divisible by three there will be a "blank file" (an incomplete file of three). The blank file will occur in the last place but one from the left in the middle rank.

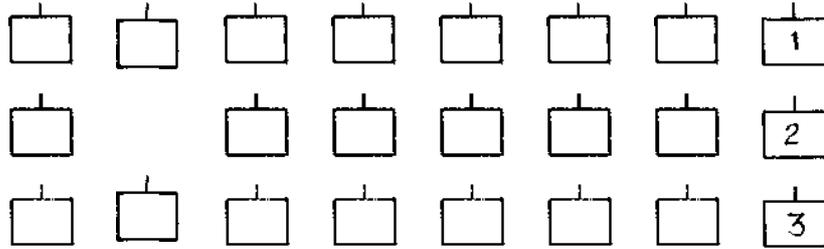


Diagram 2.

2. If two men are missing there will be a second blank file in the rear rank as shown in diagram 3.

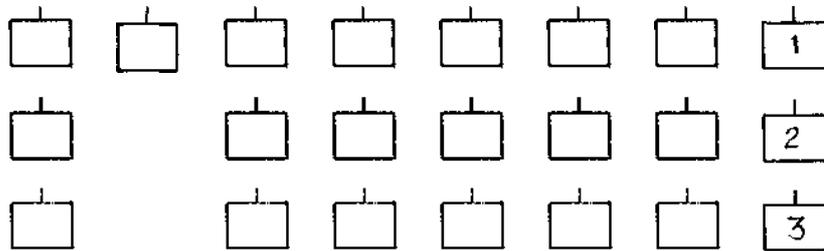


Diagram 3.

3. There must never be a blank file (an empty space) in the rank at the front. Consequently, when the platoon shown in Diagram 3 is turned about, the odd man must step forward to fill the empty space in the rear rank which is in the front.

Section 3

38. Dressing

1. Right Dress (Dahine Saj)

Each man, except the right hand man, will take a short sharp pace (15 inches) forward, pause, turn his head and eyes smartly to the right and at the same time extend his right arm (left arm if carrying a rifle in order arms) with fist closed, knuckles touching the shoulder of the man on his right. He will then take up his dressing in line by moving with short quick steps, till he is just able to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him. Care must be

taken to carry the body backward or forward with the feet, the shoulders being kept perfectly square in their original position and the body kept erect.

2. *Eyes Front (Samne Dekh)*

The head and eyes will be turned smartly to the front, the arm cut away to the side, and the position of attention resumed.

3. *General Note on Dressing*

Men on parade are expected to keep their dressing when marching and to "pick it up" automatically when halted. This means that the moment a platoon is halted, each man glances to his right/left and corrects his dressing and covers off and at once turns his head back to his front and remains at attention. This is always done without an order; the hand is not raised for this purpose—it is only raised when the formal command "Right/Left Dress" is given.

NOTE: During the initial training the men may be allowed to raise their hands to get an idea of the correct interval. Care must be taken to see that the dressing is done within three or four seconds only.

Section 4

39. **Drill On The Move**

1. *General note on Marching and the Fixed Front*

For purposes of parade ground drill, a platoon is regarded as having a "Fixed front". The "Right Guide" (right hand man in the front rank, normally No. 1 Section Commander) is the Key man. When the platoon is in line with the Right Guide in position on the right, the platoon is "facing its front" or "advancing". When turned about (with the Right Guide on the left flank of the rear rank) the platoon is "facing its rear" or "retiring". These terms are used with reference to the position of the "Right Guide" and the original front rank, not with reference to any particular side of the drill ground.

Advance Position

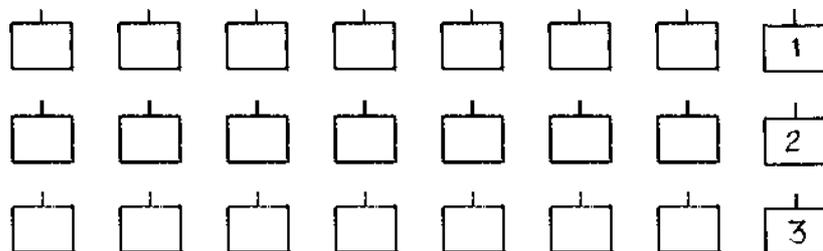


Diagram 4.

Retire Position

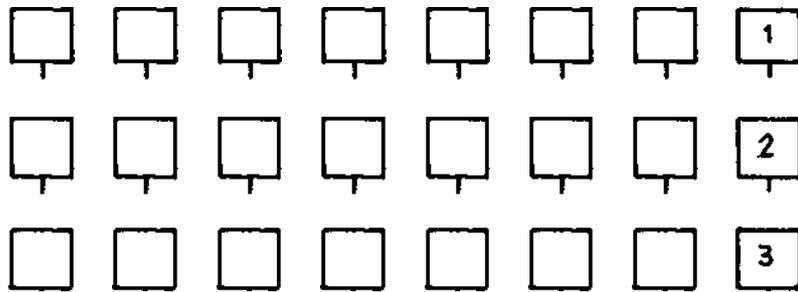


Diagram 5.

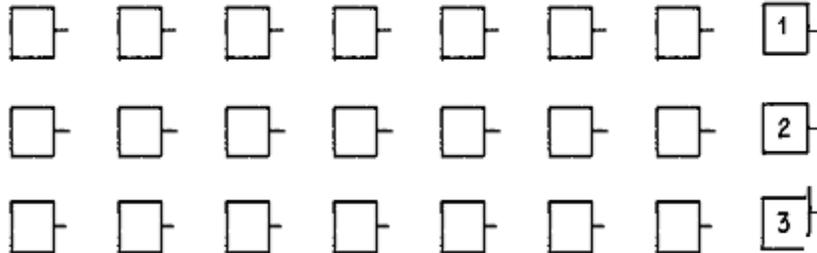
Section 5

40. Platoon In Line And In Threes

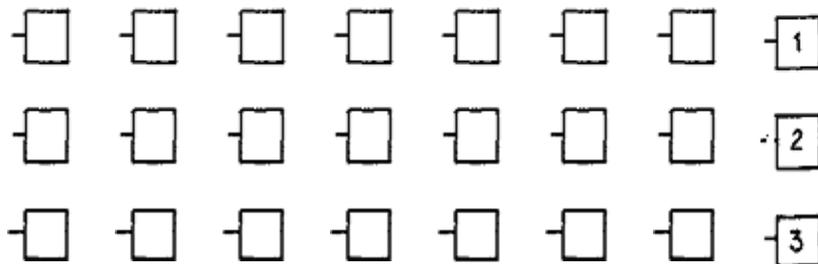
There are two drill ground formations for a platoon.

(a) In Line (of three ranks) facing to its front, or its rear, as in *Diagrams 4 and 5.*

(b) In Threes—which is a line turned to the right or the left.



Diagrams 6



Diagrams 7

Section 6

41. Dressing On The March

1. When the order is given to march, the "directing flank" is usually given, and the end man of the leading rank on the flank mentioned is responsible for the direction and the step. He is called the Guide and should look straight to his front, and the rest of the platoon must keep their dressing by him and cover off correctly.

2. Directing Flank

Unless there is very good reason to the contrary, a platoon in line marches by the Right when advancing (*i.e.* the Right Guide); by the Left when retiring (still by the original Right flank). When moving to the Right in Threes, it marches by the left (again by the Right Guide) and when moving to the Left in Threes, by the Right.

3. When moving off for the first time from the Halt, the directing flank is usually mentioned in the command, but when a platoon is being drilled on the move, the directing flank is assumed to be known as already indicated, and a well drilled platoon will not need to be constantly reminded.

Section 7

42. Marching In Line

1. By the Right Quick March (Dahine Se Tej Chal) [The cautionary word of command 'Platoon Will Advance' (Platoon Age Barhega) may precede the Order]

The Platoon steps off with the left foot, dressing by the Right.

N.B. Marching: The first step should be sharp, the pace 30 inches, 120 paces to the minute, heads held erect, eyes looking to the front, the arms as straight as the natural bend will allow, swinging naturally from the shoulder and hands slightly clasped. The arms should swing to the front and not across the body. The rhythm of good marching depends on the men being accustomed to the correct pace and time, and the steady swinging of the arms acts as metronome.

2. Platoon will Retire, About Turn (Platoon Pichhe Lautega—Pichhe Mur)

The platoon turns about by the right and steps off with the right foot, dressing by the left. The correct way to turn about is as follows. The order is heard while the left foot is coming to the ground; a complete pace is then taken with the right, and the men mark time three paces (L.R.L.) turning round while doing so and then step off with the right foot.

3. Giving the Order on the Correct Foot

(a) To ensure smartness, the command must be given on the correct foot. This needs some practice. It means that the men should hear the executive order as the left foot is passing the right foot, i. e. coming to the ground. It follows that if the Instructor is far away from his platoon the command must be given rather earlier than when he is near to the men. A little practice will soon enable the command to be given on the correct foot and the men to turn together smartly.

(b) **Blank File** The command is given with a distinct pause between the caution about and the executive turn. When there are two blank files, the front rank man marks time two paces on the word about, and turns on turn. When properly done this means that the rear rank will have overtaken him by the time the executive word of command is given, and when he turns he will be in position in the leading rank.

4. Platoon will Advance, About Turn (Platoon Age Barhega, Pichhe Mur)

The men turn about in the usual way. This command brings the platoon back into its original position. Note the caution. Care should always be taken when bringing a body of men up to a given position, or handing them over to an officer to ensure that the platoon is facing its front (right guide on the right flank). It is very easy to make a mistake and get the rear rank in front.

4—104 BPR & D/74

Section 8

43. A Line Changing Direction To A Flank

1. This movement is used to change the alignment of a body of men; it is generally employed so as to face to the right or the left (*i.e.* a turn through an angle of 90 degrees).

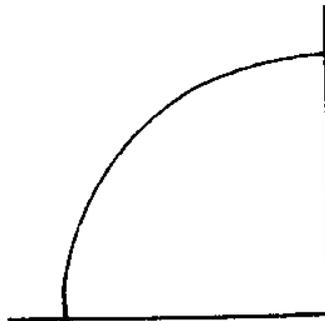


Diagram 8

It can, however, be used to turn the line half right, or half left (*i.e.* through an angle of 45 degrees). In such a case the usual caution is preceded by the word "Halt".

2. It can be done either when halted or when marching. It is best to practice from the half first.

(a) *A Line Changing Direction from the Halt. Change Direction Right, Right Form. (Dahine Disha Badal, Dahine Ban)*

(i) The Right Guide turns full right, the rest of the front rank half right. Remainder stand fast. *Quick March. (Tez Chal)*

- (ii) *The Right Guide marches forward three paces and then marks time. The rest of the front rank march round into position, picking up their dressing from the right. Ranks 2 and 3 march round into position behind their front rank men. The whole platoon continues marking time until a new order is given. See Diagram 9.*

N.B. (1) *At the Halt (Thorn Kar).* If this caution precedes the order *Right Form*, it means that the men halt as they come into position.

(2) *Change Direction Left, Left Form, Quick March (Buen Disha Badal, Baen ban, Tez Chal).* This order is used when the line has to be formed to the left. The general movements are the same. The left hand man turns full left, etc. The men dress by the left on coming into position.

(b) A Line Changing Direction when on the Move.

The commands are the same though the executive '*Quick March*' is not required since the men are on the move, and the movements similar. If it is desired that the line shall halt on completing the movement, the caution '*At the Halt*' precedes '*Right Form*.'

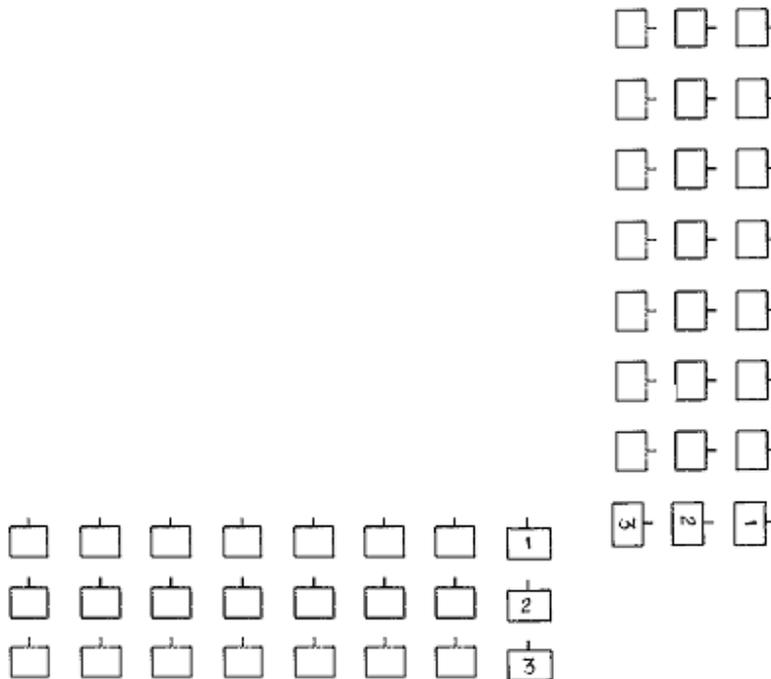


Diagram 9

3. Change Direction Right, Right Form (*Dahine Disha Badal—Dahine Ban*)

Here 'Form' is the final executive. The Right Guide turns to his right, continues marching for three paces (to clear his rear rank men) and marks time, the second and third rank men follow him round. The rest of the front rank turn half right and come up into line with the Right Guide, picking up their dressing, the other two ranks follow round and dress by the right.

- N.B.* (1) The correct foot on which to give the command is as the right foot is passing the left. The turn is then made to the right in the usual way.
(2) A similar movement can, of course, be done to the left-dressing by the left.

4. Platoon Forward (*Platoon Age Barh*)

This order is necessary to get the men, who are marking time on the move, forward again. The platoon will now be advancing in line towards the new direction, which was originally the right flank.

Section 9

44. Marching in Threes

1. Threes' is the name given on the parade ground to a platoon turned in threes to a flank.

Move to the Right in Threes, Right Turn, (Tinon tin Men Dahine Chalega, Dahine Mur)

The platoon turns to the Right in the usual way.

By the left Quick March. (Baen Se Tez Chal)

The platoon steps off with the left foot. The left-hand leading man (Right Guide) sets the pace and direction.

N.B.—It is of course equally possible to move to the left in Threes, in which case the dressing is by the right.

2. Move to the left in threes—About Turn (Tinon Tin Men Baen chalega—Pichhe Mur)

The platoon turns about in the usual way, continuing to march in the opposite direction and now dressing by the right (original flank).

Section 10

45. Turning From Threes Into Line On The Move

1. When a platoon is in Threes on the march it is moving to a flank as far as its 'fixed front' is concerned. Orders, therefore, to turn right or left (which of course will bring the platoon into line) must be prefaced by the correct caution as follows:
 - (a) Assuming the Squad/Platoon is moving to the Right.

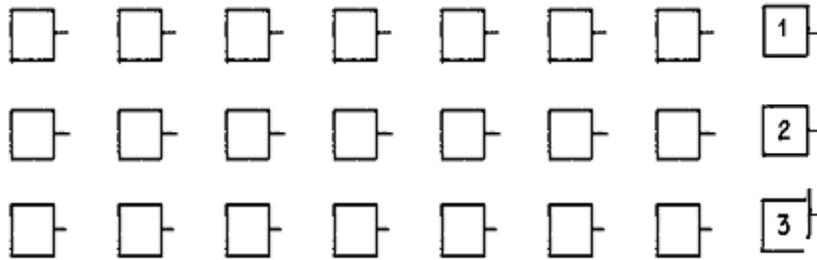


Diagram 10

The platoon will advance, Left turn (Platoon Age Barhega, Baen Mur).

This brings them into line facing their front (dressing by the right because the right guide of the platoon is on the right).

Or

The platoon will Retire, Right turn (Platoon Pichhe Lautega. DahineMur)

This brings them into line, facing their rear (dressing by the left), (b) Assuming the Squad/Platoon is moving to the left.

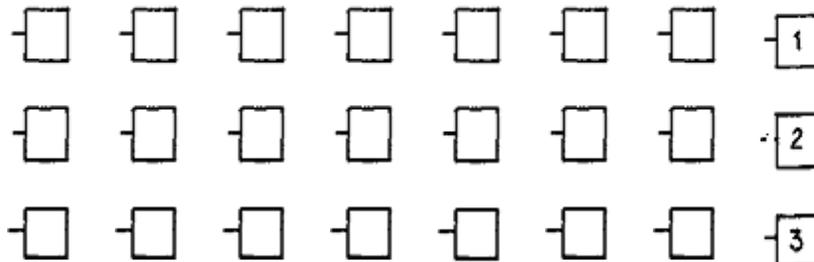


Diagram 11

The platoon will Advance, Right Turn (Platoon Age Barhega— Dahine Mur).

This brings the platoon into line facing the front (dressing by the right)

Or

The Platoon Will Retire, Left Turn. (Platoon Pichhe Lautega, Baen Mur) This will bring the platoon into line facing the rear (dressing by the Left).

Section 11

46. Turning From Line Into Threes On The Move

1. These movements are similar to those described in the previous section, but since they are done on the move, the executive 'Quick March'

is not required. The movement can, of course, be carried out whether a platoon is advancing in line or retiring but the cautions will vary in accordance with the principle of the fixed front.

(a) When a Platoon is Advancing—

Move to the Right in Threes, Right Turn. (Tinon Tin Men Dahine Chalega, Dahine Mur)

Move to the Left in Threes, Left Turn. (Tinon Tin Men Baen Chalega, Baen Mur)

(b) When a Platoon is Retiring, the caution will be the same.

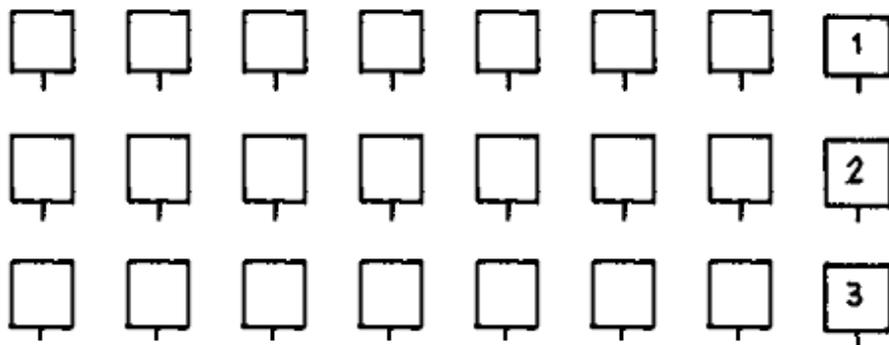


Diagram 12

Move to the Left in Threes, Right Turn (Tinon Tin Men Baen Chalega, Dahine Mur) will be given for turning the platoon to the original Left Flank, and

Move to the Right in Threes, Left Turn (Tinon Tin Men Dahine Chalega, Baen-Mur), will be given for turning the platoon to the original Right Flank.

Section 12

47. Wheeling In Threes

Change Direction Left (or Right), Left (or Right) Wheel (Baen/Dahine Disha Badal, Baen/Dahine Ghoom)

The inner man of the leading section of threes will move round a quarter of the circumference of a circle having a radius of four feet, stepping short to enable the outer men of the file who would step out during the wheeling to keep the dressing with him. The inner man of each file will turn his head and eyes towards the outer man of his file, the remainder of the file will turn their heads and eyes towards the inner man. When the quarter circle is completed the file will turn their heads and eyes to the front and move on in the new direction. The other files in succession will follow in the footsteps of the leading file without increasing or diminishing their distances from each other altering the time.

N.B. (1) In a good wheel each section will come round at the same point and dressing and covering will be retained. If the movement is done in a slovenly way, the column is apt to be pushed out towards the right/left.

(2) If the Instructor wishes to wheel through less than a right angle he gives the command "Forward" (*Age Barh*) when he wishes.

Section 13

48. Forming Line From Threes Facing The Same Direction

1. A very useful movement for parade purposes is to form the Threes into Line facing the same direction in which it is marching. If the platoon is moving to its right in Threes or advancing in Threes, the command should be as follows:

On the Left, Form Squad/Platoon. (Baeti ko Squad/Platoon Buna)

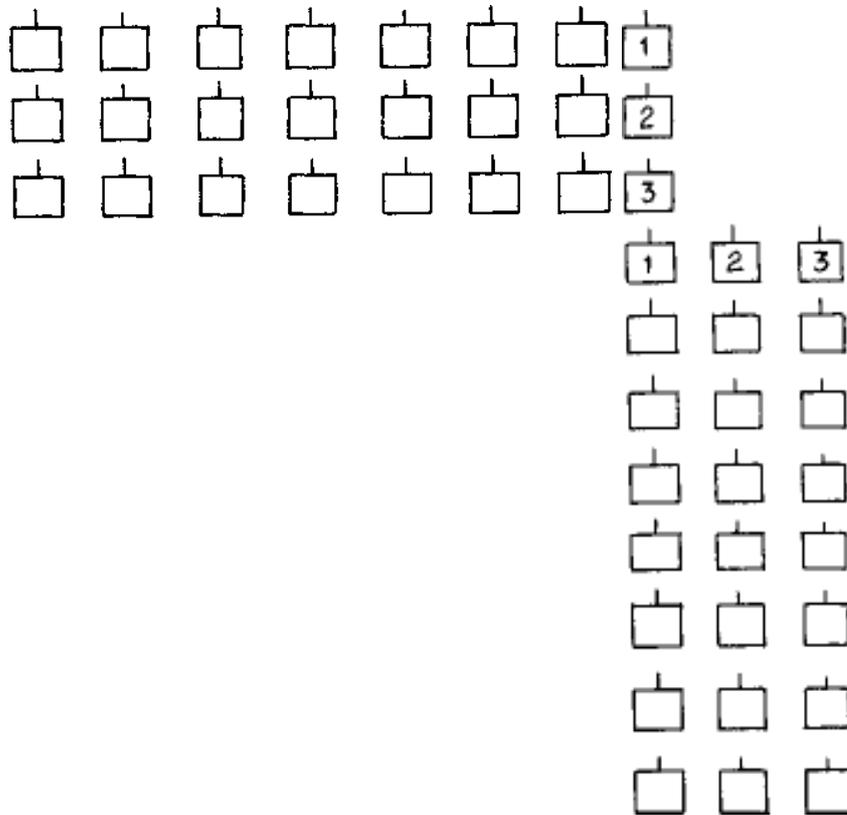


Diagram 13

2. The left-hand man (Right Guide) leads forward three paces and then marks time, his right-hand men (the other section commanders) follow round behind him, covering off at the correct interval. The rest of the Squad/Platoon turn half left and march up into position in three ranks covering off and dressing by the right. The whole Squad/Platoon continues to mark time, making sure that the dressing is correct and awaits the next order.

N.B.—If it is desired to halt the men on the completion of the movement, the caution "*At The Halt*" precedes the order. The left hand man (Right Guide) then halts when he has completed his three paces, and the other men halt as they come up.

3. *On the Right, Form Squad/Platoon (Dahine ko Squad/Platoon Bana)*

This would bring the third rank (Rear Rank) in front. It should only be used if it is desired to form the platoon in line in the opposite direction to that in which it is marching. The order will then be followed by the command "*About Turn*" which of course brings the front rank into its correct position.

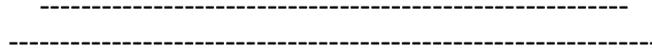
N.B. (1) If the Squad/Platoon were marching in Threes to the Left, these orders would be reversed, e.g. "*On the Right Form Squad/Platoon*" would bring the front rank forward.

(2) Dressing will always be picked up from the flank on which the platoon pivots, unless a contrary order is given.

(3) It is desirable to teach this movement first at the halt and then on the march. When doing at the halt (Right guide leading) as soon as the words of command (*to form Squad in the left*) is received, all except the left hand man of the leading file of three (i.e. the original right guide of the Squad/Platoon) turn half left and then remain standing.

After this, the words of command '*Quick March*' (*Tez chal*) will be given. On this command the guide (who has not turned) will march three paces and then mark time, the rest of the front rank march round into position on the left of the guide, picking up their dressing from the right. Ranks 2 and 3 (i.e. Middle and Rear ranks) march round into position behind their front rank men. The whole platoon/squad continue marking time, until a new order is given (Similarly when the formation is done on the right, the right guide of the leading file i.e. the original right guide of the rear rank will move three paces forward. The rear rank will come to the front).

(4) While doing this formation on the march/halt it is necessary that each file of three comes to the new position together and also start mark time/halt together.



CHAPTER IX

FORMING TWO RANKS

It is often necessary to form two ranks for the purpose of Street lining and Riot Drill. To effect this the only rank to move is the center rank. Before forming two ranks the Squad will be dressed and numbered.

Section 1

49. To Form Two Ranks From Three Ranks

I. "Form—two Ranks". (Do line Bana)

First Movement: The center rank carry the left foot, a side pace of 24 inches to the left.

Second Movement : Odd numbers bring the right foot forward a full pace of 30 inches. Even numbers bring the right foot to the rear a full Pace of 30 inches.

Third Movement : The center rank resume the position of attention—odd numbers in the intervals of the front rank, even numbers in the intervals of the rear rank.

2:If there is a blank file in the center rank, the left hand man of that rank will carry out the reverse of the above *i.e.* if an odd number, he will act as an even number, and *vice versa*, except that in the case of a squad with an even number of men in the front and no center or rear rank man the blank file the left hand man of the center rank will act in accordance with the detail for his even number.

Common faults:

(i) Center rank not knowing their correct numbers.

(ii) Incorrect interval in three ranks thereby not leaving room for the center rank men to move into. This can be overcome by giving "*Right—Dress*" before forming two deep.

(iii) Not carrying the left foot far enough to the left in the first movement, thereby causing collisions and uneven covering.

(iv) Not reaching out far enough in the second movement, thereby failing to reach the correct new alignment.

3. "In Two Ranks, Right—Dress" (Do Line Main, Dahine Saj).—The normal drill movements are carried out except that dressing is without arms interval, each man being allowed 24 inches in the ranks, the rear rank remains two paces of 30 inches in rear of the front rank.

Section 2

50. To Form Three Ranks From Two Ranks

"Form—Three Ranks" (Tin Line Bana).—The original center rank men take up their original position as follows:—

First Movement :

If in the front rank they bring the left foot to the rear a full pace of 30 inches. If in the rear they bring the left foot a full pace of 30 inches forward..

Second Movement:

All concerned will carry the right foot a side pace of 24 inches.

Third Movement:

Centre rank men resume the position of Attention.

2. "In Three Ranks, Right—Dress" (Tin Line Main Dahine Saj): — Dressing will be carried out as normal at arms length.

Common faults:

“Not carrying the right foot off far enough in the second movement thereby failing to cover off.

CHAPTER X

MARCHING OFF IN SINGLE FILE

It is often necessary for a squad in three ranks to form single file, e.g. when marching into a building or through a narrow opening.

Section 1

51. A Squad Facing Its right Flank In Threes With The Front Rank On The Left, Marching Off In Single File.

1. When Halted

"Form Single File from the Left—Quick March". (Baen se EK File Bana—Tej Chal)

At the command "*Quick March*" the front rank march off and the remaining two sections will mark time. When the last man of the front rank passes the man in front of the center rank, the center rank will follow on behind the front rank. Similar action will be taken by the rear rank.

2. On the March

"Form single file, from the Left" (Baen se EK File Bana)

At the command "*Left*" the section on the left (Front rank) will continue marching and remaining two (Center and Rear ranks) will mark time. When the 1st man of the rank passes the Guides of the sections, the remaining two ranks will follow.

Forming Threes

3. When Halted

"At the Halt on the Right, form Threes—Quick March" (Dahine Thamkar Tinon Tin Bana—Tej Chal)

At the command "*Threes*" the front rank will remain stationary and the other two ranks will make a right incline.

At the command "*Quick March*" the middle and the rear ranks will form up on the right of the front rank in Threes.

4. On the March

"On the Right, form Threes". (Dahine Par Tinon Tin Bana)

At this command the front rank will mark time and the remaining two ranks will form up on the right of the front rank in Threes and mark time.

Section 2

52. A Squad In Three Ranks (Line) In The Advance Position, Marching Off In Single File.

1. When Halted

"Advance in Single File from the Right—Quick March". (Dahine Se EK File men age barh—Tej Chal.)

At the command *"Right"* the right guides of the three ranks remain stationary and the remaining men of the Squad incline to the right.

2. At the command *"Quick March"*, the Right Guide of the front rank advances forward and the remaining men of the front rank follow him. The other two ranks (middle and rear rank) mark time. When the last man of the front rank is passing the Right Guide of the middle rank, the middle rank will advance with its right guide leading and follow the front rank. Similar action will be taken by the rear rank.

3. On the March

"Form Single File, from the Right" (Dahine Se Ek File Bana)

At this command the whole squad will mark time and incline to the right except for the guides of the section. At the same time the front rank will advance with its right guide leading. When the last man of the front rank is passing the Right Guide of the middle rank, the middle rank will advance forward and follow the front rank. Similarly the rear rank will follow the middle rank.

NOTE: While forming single file the ranks will wheel from the point from where their respective guides moved.

Forming Three Ranks (Line)

4. When Halted

"At the Halt on the Left Form Line—Quick March" (Baen Thamkar Line Bana—Tej Chal)

At the command *"Line"* the right Guide of the three ranks will remain stationary and the remaining men of the squad will incline to the left.

At the command *"Quick March"* the Right Guide of the front rank will remain stationary and the remaining men of the front rank will march off and form line on the left of the right guide.

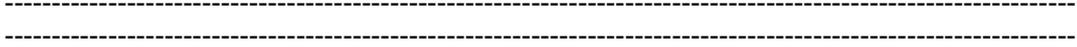
Similar action will be taken by the middle and rear rank. They will advance forward and form line behind the front rank. Interval and distance between the ranks will be the same as for a squad in Three Ranks.

5. On the March

"On the Left, Form Line". (Baen Par Line Bana)

At this command the Right Guide of the front rank will mark time and the remaining men of the front rank will form line on his left. The other two sections who will be marking time will advance forward and form line behind the front rank and correct their interval and distance.

NOTE: IF "*At the Halt*" it preceded before the command, men will halt when they reach their correct positions.



CHAPTER XI

DRILL WITH ARMS

Section 1

53. General Rules—Rifle Exercises.

1. Squad Drill With Arms will be combined with the instruction in the following:
 - (a) Care of arms including names of principal parts of the Rifle.
 - (b) Aiming and Firing
2. It is important that the above instruction should commence from the time the recruit is issued with his rifle, in order to avoid faulty teaching at the early stages.
3. When rifle exercises are performed at the halt, judging the time, the motions will be carried out with a pause between each motion equal to two paces in quick time. When performed on the march, each motion will be carried out as the left foot comes to the ground.
4. Squads drilling with rifles will be practiced in the different marches and variations of steps described in the foregoing sections. The disengaged arm will be allowed to swing naturally.
5. The most common fault in rifle exercise is lack of control over the rifle which causes movement of the body. In rifle exercises the upper arm and elbow are kept close to the body and there should be no movement of the head or body except where specifically given.
6. Rifles and bayonets on parade should be clean and dry as for inspection.
7. The Arms Drill is to be taught, first by numbers and then in judging time.

Section 2

54. Falling In With Rifles At the Order.

1. "Squad, Fall-in" (Squad Line Ban)

The men will fall in as previously described, with the rifle held perpendicularly at his right side, the butt on the ground with the toe of the butt in line with the toe of the right boot. The arm to be slightly bent, the hand to hold the rifle at or near the outer band, back of the band to the right, thumb against the thigh, fingers together and slanting towards the ground, elbow to the rear.

2. When each man has taken up his dressing (in this case putting up

his left arm with fist closed and looking to the right) he will stand at ease, as explained in Section 4. When dressing is done at the slop the right arm will be raised.

Section 3

55. Attention. (Savdhan)

The normal position of attention is maintained except that the right hand will hold the rifle perpendicularly at the right side; thumb on the left of the rifle and touching the leg; fingers together on the right of the rifle, slanting towards the ground; back of the hand to the right and the wrist well behind the rifle: toe of the butt in line with the toe of the right boot, magazine to the front.

NOTE: When demonstrating, the instructor will fix his bayonet and show how the line of the rifle, when prolonged by the bayonet, comes up outside the arm and not between the arm and the body. This position is a natural one and is the only position that will guarantee the bayonet being free of the clothing when "sloping arms" with bayonets fixed.

Common faults:

- (i) Butt in the wrong position.
- (ii) Rifle not perpendicular and sling not square to the front,
- (iii) Back of the hand turned to the front,
- (iv) Wrist not behind the rifle and elbow away from the side.
- (v) Fingers not together and allowed to curl into the front of the rifle.

Section 4

56. Stand At Ease And Stand Easy.

1. Stand At Ease (Vishram)

"Stand—at—Ease" :—Carry the left leg to the left so that the feet are about 12 inches apart, keep the left arm to the side; force the rifle out to the front by keeping the right arm straight; shoot the right hand forward to its fullest extent but without moving the hand on the rifle, the toe of the butt or allowing the right shoulder to drop. The weight of the body rests equally on both the feet.

Common faults:

- (i) Moving the butt.
- (ii) Allowing the rifle to swing to the right or left.

- (iii) Moving the left arm.
- (iv) Putting the fingers round the front of the rifle.
- (v) Lack of co-ordination between right arm and left leg.

2. Stand Easy. (Aram Se)

"Stand—easy": —Force the right hand up to the nose cap of the rifle, the fingers and thumb curling round the rifle; bend the right arm so that the angle of the rifle is not altered.

3. Stand at Ease from Stand Easy.

"Squad": —Force the right hand down the rifle to the correct position of Stand at Ease; brace the body.

4. Attention from the Stand At Ease.

"Squad—Attention" (Squad Savdhan): Pull the rifle into the side keeping the butt on the ground; keep the left arm to the side and adopt the position as in Section 3.

Common faults:

- (i) Moving and banging the butt on the ground,
- (ii) Lack of co-ordination between foot and arm.
- (iii) Bending forward from the waist.

Section 5

57. Slope From The Order, Order From The Slope.

The Slope from the Order

1. "Squad Slope Arms By Number—One" (Gintise Kandhe Shastra, Squad—EK): Throw the right straight up the right side with a vigorous flick of the wrist, and release it before the right hand reaches the level of the waist belt, jerking the right arm straight again; at the same time move the left arm across the body and catch the rifle just below the upper sling swivel, hand in line with the right armpit, knocking the rifle back into the right shoulder strike the rifle with the palm and of the hand, closing the fingers and thumb of the left hand round the rifle and as the left hand strikes the rifle, catch the butt with the fingers and thumb of the right hand.

NOTE: The fingers and thumb of the right hand will be in the same position as at attention, but will hold the butt so that the forefinger is about in line with the knuckle of the butt, rifle perpendicular with the magazine to the front.

2. "Squad—Two" (Squad—Do): Force the rifle across the body so that the muzzle passes just in front of the face. As soon as the muzzle has passed the face and the left hand is about in line with the left breast pocket, let go of the rifle with the left hand and drop the hand so that the

elbow is against the side (as at Attention) forearm-parallel to the ground and at right angles to the body, wrist straight; at the same time move the fingers and thumb of the right hand round the rifle and drive the butt into the heel of the left hand just before the magazine touches the left shoulder. Close the fingers and thumb of the left hand round the butt so that the thumb is round the toe of the butt and about one inch above the butt plate and the fingers from the center knuckles to the tips are together on top of the butt and point towards the muzzle.

NOTE: The magazine will now point to the left and be flat on the shoulder.

3. "Squad—Three" (Squad—Teen): Cut the right hand the nearest way to the position of attention. Keep the wrist stiff and curl up the fingers on the downward travel. Keep the rifle still.

Common faults:

First Movement:

- (i) Failing to release the rifle with the right hand soon enough to allow both hands to grasp the rifle at the same time.
- (ii) Dropping the right shoulder to the rear.

Second Movement:

- (iii) Holding the rifle too long with the left hand, thereby causing the magazine to hit the shoulder before the butt hits the hand.
- (iv) Moving the head and body.
- (v) Letting the upper part of the arms and elbows leave the side.
- (vi) Not keeping the left elbow tight to the body and fore-arm parallel to the ground and at right angles to the body.

Third Movement:

- (vii) Moving the right elbow away from the body, thereby bringing the hand out in front of the body.
- (viii) Moving the rifle on the shoulder.

The Order from the slope.

4. "Squad Order Arms By Number—One" (gintise Baju Shastra, Squad—Ek) : Pull the rifle down to the full extent of the left arm, retaining the original grip with the left hand, so that the rifle is perpendicular and bearing against the inner part of the left elbow. At the same time move the right arm across the body so that the right hand meets the rifle slightly above the level of the left shoulder; fingers and thumb round the rifle.

NOTE : This must be brought out in the Instructor's demonstration.

5. "Squad—Two" (Squad—Do) : Pull the rifle down and across the body with the right hand to the position of attention, magazine to the front

and butt about one inch above the ground. At the same time move the left hand and forearm upward and across the body, steadying the rifle at the same time with the fingers stretched out and together resting lightly on the nose cap. At the moment of impact, cut the fingers and thumb of the right hand away from the front of the rifle to the correct position of attention.

6. "Squad—Three" (Squad—Teen): Cut the left hand to the left side to the position of attention and resume the position of attention.

NOTE : The rifle will be lowered gently to the ground and the muzzle lulled slightly to the rear as the right arm is straightened.

Common faults:

First Movement:

- (i) Moving the head.
- (ii) Releasing the grip with the left hand.
- (iii) Making a circular movement with the right hand in front, instead of upward and close across the body.
- (iv) Not reaching far enough up with the right hand, or reaching too far above the outer band as a result of which again moving the right hand to bring it to the correct attention position after the third motion.

Second Movement:

- (v) Waiving the butt out in front of the body.
- (vi) Dropping the right shoulder to the rear.
- (vii) Failure- to synchronize the arrival of the left hand on the rifle with the movement of the fingers of the right hand.

Third Movement:

- (viii) Banging the butt on the ground.
- (ix) Cutting the left arm away in a circular movement and allowing it to go too far to the rear.

Section 6

58. Present From the Slope, Slope From The Present

The Present from the Slope.

1. "Squad Present Arms By Number—One" (Gintise Salami Shastra Squad—Ek) : Grasp the rifle with the right hand at the small of the butt, forearm close to the body.

2. "Squad Two" (Squad-Do) : Raise the rifle with the right hand perpendicular in front of the center of the body, magazine to the left. At the same time place the left hand smartly on the stock, wrist on the magazine, fingers pointing upwards, thumb close to the forefinger, point

of the thumb in line with the mouth; the left elbow to be close to the butt, the right elbow and butt close to the body.

3. "Squad Three" (Squad—Teen) : Quitting the rifle with the left hand bring it down perpendicularly in front of and about three inches from the center of the body, turning the magazine to the front, holding at the full extent of the right arm, fingers together slanting downwards, and meet it smartly with the left hand outside the sling, immediately behind the back sight, thumb pointing towards the muzzle. At the same time place the hollow of the right foot against the left heel, both knees straight. The weight of the rifle to be supported by the left hand.

Common faults:

First Movement:

- (i) Making a circular movement with the right arm and letting the right elbow leave the body.
- (ii) Not gripping the rifle with the fingers of the right hand round the butt.
- (iii) Moving the butt to the right to meet the right hand.

Second Movement:

- (iv) Raising the original level of the right hand.
- (v) Failure to have the left elbow along the butt
- (vi) Focusing the eyes on the rifle, causing a tendency to lean backwards.
- (vii) Moving the head.

Third Movement :

- (viii) Pushing the rifle upwards before starting the downward movement of the right arm.
- (ix) Failure to release the rifle with the left hand, thereby causing the hand to be too high.
- (x) Rearing back from the rifle.
- (xi) Turning the right toe out, therefore dragging the right shoulder to the rear.
- (xii) Un-coordinated movement with arms and foot.

The Slope from the Present.

4. "Squad Slope Arms By Number—One" (Gintise Kandhe Shastra Squad—EK) : Bring the right, foot up in the line with the left and at the same time place the rifle on the left shoulder as described in the second motion of the Slope from the Order.

5. "Squad Two" (Squad-Do) : Cut away the right hand to the side; rifle to be kept still.

Section 7

59. Fix Bayonets, Unfix Bayonets.

Fix Bayonets.

1. ***"The Squad will Fix Bayonets, Squad—Fix" (Squad Sangin Lagaiga, sangin)*** : Force the rifle out with the right arm as for the position of the Stand at Ease and bend the left elbow to the left rear; seize the bayonet handle with the left hand, thumb touching the back, fingers curled round the bayonet handle. Straighten the left arm downwards, with back of the hand against the body, arm against the side, scabbard turned upwards in an anti-clockwise direction, left wrist bent so that the bayonet blade is almost perpendicular on the left buttock.

Common faults:

- (i) Bending the body to the right.
- (ii) Lack of co-ordination in the movements of the right and left arms.
- (iii) Trying to pull the bayonet out of the scabbard with an upward movement.

2. ***"Squad Bayonets" (Squad—Luga)*** : Turn the head downwards and far enough to the right to enable the eyes to see the muzzle of the rifle, bring the bayonet between the body and the arm and fix it on the rifle; strike the bayonet handle so that the left arm is nearly straight, the forearm, wrist and hand in one straight line, fingers and thumb together and extended.

Common faults:

- (i) Taking the left arm too far away from the side.
- (ii) Leaning the body forward from the hips when fixing.

3. ***"Squad—Attention" (Squad Savdhan)*** : Resume the position of attention by pulling the rifle into the right side cutting the left arm the nearest way to the left side and turning the head to the front.

Common faults:

- (i) Lack of co-ordination between arms and head.
- (ii) Moving the butt on the ground.
- (iii) Cutting the left arm away with a loose wrist. *Unfix Bayonets.*

4. ***"The Squad will unfix Bayonets, Squad-Unfix" (Squad Sangin Uterega-Sangin)*** :

With the right hand lift the rifle and place the butt on the ground between the feet so that the toe of the butt is in line with the toes of the boots; grip the rifle between the knees (which should be slightly bent) and strike the rifle on the stock with the left hand just below the

nosecap. Maintain the grip with the left hand and with the right hand strike the bayonet handle, press the retaining spring with the middle finger of the right hand, twist the bayonet to the left forcing it off the rifle muzzle, turn it to the right and lift it clear of the nose cap so that the blade is perpendicular with the ring to the rear.

NOTE : In case of bayonets with retaining spring on the left side, the spring will be pressed by the left thumb and the bayonet lifted straight up by the right hand to keep it just clear of the nose cap.

Common faults :

- (i) Failing to grip the rifle between the knees.
- (ii) Opening the heels.
- (iii) Leaning the body forward from the hips in order to clear the bayonet from the rifle.
- (iv) Looking down at the bayonet.

5. "Squad—Bayonets" (Squad-Utar) : With a flick of the right wrist, turn the bayonet over to the left and seize the scabbard with the left hand, pushing it as far forward as possible for the mouth to receive the bayonet. Force the bayonet fully home in the scabbard, left elbow straight to the rear, shoulders square to the front, right elbow close to the front of the body. As the right wrist flicks the bayonet over in the initial movement turn the head downwards and to the left, so that one can just see the bayonet going into the scabbard.

Common faults :

- (i) Dropping the left shoulder to the rear.
- (ii) Bringing the left elbow to the front.
- (iii) Allowing the right elbow to leave the body.

6. "Squad—Attention" (Squad-Savdhan) : Strike the rifle with the right hand on the stock in the same position as at attention. At the same time return the head to the position of attention; count a regular pause and, by lifting the Rifle over the right instep, resume the position of attention.

Common faults :

- (i) Opening the heels.
- (ii) Lack of co-ordination between head, arms and knees.

Section 8

60. Saluting At The Slope.

1. "Squad to the Front, By Numbers Squad—One" (Ginti Se Samne Siloot-Squad Ek): The right hand is brought across to strike the rifle just below the small of the butt with the palm of the hand. Fingers extended and thumb close to the forefinger, forearm parallel to the ground.

2. **"Squad—Two" (Squad-Do)** : The right hand will be cut the shortest way smartly to the side.

NOTE : When marching with a rifle at the slope, and a compliment is to be paid, the right hand will be brought up as in the first motion of saluting at the slope, three paces before reaching the officer and cut away three paces after passing him; the head and eyes turned smartly in the direction of the officer on coming to the salute and turned smartly to the front when cutting the right arm away.

Common faults :

- (i) Elbow drooping;
- (ii) Moving from the correct position of the slope, particularly moving the butt of the rifle to the right to meet the right hand.

Section 9

6I. Port From The Order, Order From The Port.

The Port from the Order.

1. **"Port—Arms" (Baen—Shastra)** : With a flick of the right hand, wrist and forearm, throw the rifle diagonally across the body, muzzle leading, magazine to the left and downwards, barrel crossing opposite the tint of the left shoulder (Do not allow the right hand to rise above the level of the waist belt). Catch the rifle at the point of balance with the left hand thumb and fingers round the rifle in line with the left breast pocket button. As the left hand catches the rifle, strike the rifle with the right hand with the fingers and the thumb curled round the small of the butt, thumb nearest to the body.

Common faults :

- (i) Transferring the rifle from one hand to the other.
- (ii) Leaning the body backwards as the rifle is thrown across the body.

The Order from the Port

2. **"Order Arms By Numbers, Squad—One" (Ginitise Baju Shastra, Squad—Ek)** : Strike the rifle with the right hand at the place at which it is held at the order, with the fingers and thumb round the rifle so that the thumb is nearest to the body, right forearm and elbow close on the rifle.

3. **"Squad—Two" (Squad—Do)** : With the right hand force the rifle down to the right side and strike the stock with the left hand as for the second movement of the Order Arms from the Slope.

Common faults :

As for the second movement of the Order Arms from the Slope.

4. **"Squad—Three" (Squad—Tin)** : As for the third movement of the Order Arms from the Slope.

Section 10

62. Port From The Slope, Slope From The Port

Port from the Slope.

1. "*Port Arms By Numbers, Squad—One*" (*Gintise Baen Shastra, Squad—Ek*): Seize the rifle with the right hand as in the first movement of the Present Arms.
2. "*Squad—Two*" (*Squad—Do*) : Pull the rifle downwards across the body with the right hand, releasing it with the left; hand inwards and upwards to receive the rifle in front of the left breast pocket.

Common faults :

As for the first movement of the Present Arms.

Slope from the Port.

3. "*Slope Arms By Numbers, Squad—One*" (*Gintise Kandhe Shastra, Squad—Ek*): Drive the rifle into the left hand as in the second movement of the Slope from the Order.
4. "*Squad—Two*" (*Squad—Do*): Cut the right hand to the right side as for the third movement of the Slope from the Order.

Section 11

63. For Inspection Port Arms, Ease Springs.

NOTE : The Squad having been ordered to Port Arms, the following movements are taught.

For Inspection Port Arms.

1. "*For Inspection Port Arms by Numbers, Squad—One*". (*Gintise Nirikshan Ke Liye Baen Shastra, Squad—EK*): Push the safety catch forward with the right thumb.
2. "*Squad Two*" (*Squad—Do*): Seize the knob of the bolt between the thumb and forefinger of the right hand, remaining fingers curled up, right elbow against the body.
3. "*Squad Three*" (*Squad—Teen*): Turn the bolt handle upwards with the right hand and draw back the bolt to its full extent.
4. "*Squad—Four*" (*Squad—Char*): Strike the butt with right hand so that the palm is held above the butt; fingers together in front of the butt and extended towards the ground; the thumb horizontal and on the inside of the butt, nail in line with the cocking piece; right elbow against the body.

NOTE: When judging the time, the words of command, which may be given from the Slope or the Order, is "*For Inspection, Port—Arms*" (*Nirikshan ke Liye, Baen—Shastra*)

Common Faults:

- (i) Allowing the rifle to move, owing to lack of control with the left hand.
- (ii) Allowing the right hand to stray from one movement to the next without pause.
- (iii) Having the back of the right hand and the wrist arched in the final position.

Ease Springs:

5. ***"Ease Springs By Numbers, Squad—One" (Gintise Bolt Chala, Squad—EK):*** Seize the knob of the bolt between the thumb, and the forefinger of the right hand, remaining fingers curled up, right elbow against the body.

6. ***"Squad—Two" (Squad Do):*** With the right hand, close and open the bolt fully three times or until all rounds or cases are ejected. Leave the Bolt fully drawn back..

7. ***"Squad—Three" (Squad—Teen):*** Force the bolt home with the right hand and turn the bolt handle downwards.

8. ***"Squad—Four" (Squad-Char):*** Press the trigger with the right forefinger.

9. ***"Squad—Five" (Squad—Punch):*** Strike and force down the bolt handle with the fingers of the right hand; turn the safety catch over to the rear with the forefinger.

10. ***"Squad—Six" (Squad-Chhe):*** Return the right hand to the small of the butt.

Common faults:

- (i) Allowing the rifle to move owing to lack of control with left hand.
- (ii) Allowing the right hand to stray from one movement to the next without pause.

Section 12

64. Examine From The Port, Ease Spring, port From The Examine, Order From the Examine.

The Examine from the Port:

1. ***"Examine—Arms" (Janch—Shastra):*** Move the left foot forward and to the left as in the loading position. Force the muzzle downwards with the left hand keeping the arm slightly bent so that the rifle is in front of the right shoulder, muzzle at eye level of the Inspecting Officer, but pressing against the out-side of the right thigh; place the right thumb in the charger guide with the nail uppermost and at an angle to reflect the light up the barrel; fingers together on the right of the rifle and extended towards the ground.

Common faults:

- (i) Bending the body forward from the hips.
- (ii) Turning the left toe to the front.
- (iii) Left thumb at an incorrect angle.

Ease Springs.

2. "Ease Springs" (Colt Chala): See under "For Inspection Port Arms. Ease Springs".
The Port from the Examine.

3. "Port—Arms" (Baen—Shastra): Pull the rifle towards the body with the left hand into the correct position of the port; strike the rifle at the small of the butt with the right hand, forefinger outside the trigger guard; to close the heels as in the position of attention.

The Order from the Examine.

4. "Order Arms By Numbers, Squad—One" (Gintise Baju Shastra, Squad—Ek): Strike the rifle with the right hand in the same place as that held at the order, fingers and thumb curled round the rifle, forearm and elbow on the stock; at the same time close the heels.

5. "Squad—Two" (Squad—Do): Pull the rifle down to the right side, striking it with the left hand just below the nose cap as for the second movement of the Order from the Slope.

6. "Squad—Three" (Squad—Teen): Cut the left hand away and keep the rifle on the ground by the right hand as in the third movement of the Order from the Slope.

NOTE: The Examine Arms position can be adopted from the position of Order Arms as well.

Common faults:

First Movement:

- (i) Not reaching up for enough with the right hand.
- (ii) Pulling the rifle towards the body with the left hand.

Second and third movements:

- (iii) As in the Order from the Slope.

NOTE: (i) When a man in a squad has had his rifle inspected, he will wait until the man next but one to him is being inspected. He will then ease springs, order arms and stand at ease.

(ii) If the squad are in the position of "For *inspection Port Arms*" and one or more men are ordered individually to examine arms, they will return to the original position before easing springs, etc.

Section 13

65. Trail From The Order, Order From The Trial.

Trial from the Order.

1. **"Trial—Arms" (Tol—Shastra):** With a flick of the wrist, throw the muzzle forwards and downwards, catching the rifle at the point of balance with the right hand, fingers and thumb round the rifle, back of the hand to the right, arm straight so that the rifle is horizontal, muzzle pointing to the front and the magazine underneath.

Common faults:

- (i) Rifle not horizontal.
- (ii) Muzzle pointing to the right or left.
- (iii) Right thumb on the right of the rifle instead of round it.

Order from the trail

2. **"Order—Arms" (Bazu—Shastra):** With the right hand force the butt to the ground and raise the muzzle to assume the correct position of the Order.

Common faults:

- (i) Failing to get the butt in the right place.
- (ii) Banging the butt on the ground.

Section 14

66. Trail From The Slope, Slope From The Trail *Trail from the Slope.*

1. **"Trail Arms By Numbers, Squad—One" (Gintise Tot Shastra, Squad—EK):** Seize the rifle at the point of balance with the right hand, fingers and thumb round the rifle with the back of the hand uppermost.

2. **"Squad—Two" (Squad—Do):** Pull the rifle downwards and across the body with the right hand to the correct position of the trail, at the same time cutting the left hand to the side to the position of attention.

Common faults:

First Movement:

Failing to reach up the rifle high enough.

Second Movement:

- (i) Taking the elbow away from the side, thereby losing control.
- (ii) Moving the head.

Slope from the Trail.

3. **"Slope Arms by Numbers, Squad—One" (Gintise kandhe Shastra, Squad—Ek):** Force the rifle across the body,

driving the butt into the heel of the left hand as in the second movement of the slope from the order.

4. **"Squad—Two" (Squad—Do):** Cut the right arm to the side as in the third movement of the Slope from the Order.

Common faults:

Failing to reach up high enough in the first movement.

Section 15

67. Secure From The Slope, Slope from The Secure. *Secure from the Slope.*

1. **"Secure Arms By Numbers, Squad—One" (Gintise Sambhal Shastra Squad—EK):** As for the first movement of the from the Slope.

2. **"Squad—Two (Squad—Do):** Turn the magazine to the front, move the left hand from the butt and seize the rifle in line with the left armpit, fingers round the rifle, and thumb pointing towards the muzzle, back of the hand to the left, elbow forced downwards and to the rear.

3. **"Squad—Three (Squad—Teen):** Swing the muzzle down to the front with the right hand so that the rifle is pointing slightly downwards and in the same direction as the right toe, with the bolt action under the left armpit; release the rifle with the right hand; cut the right hand to the position of attention.

Common faults: First Movement

(i) As in the order from the Slope. Second Movement:

(ii) Failing to reach up high enough with the left hand, thereby making it impossible to have the bolt action under the armpit in the final position.

Third Movement:

(iii) Bringing the left hand forward thereby causing the bolt action to be forward of the armpit. Placing the thumb round the barrel.

Slope from the Secure

4. **"Slope Arms By Numbers, Squad—One" (Gintise Kandhe Shastra, Squad—Ek):** Flex the left wrist and without moving the position of hand or upper arm, bring the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the left shoulder, magazine to the front; at the same time seize the rifle at the small of the butt with the right hand; back of the hand to the front, fingers and thumb curled round the small of the butt.

5. "*Squad—Two*" (*Squad—Do*): Drive the butt into the heel of the left hand as in the second movement of the Slope from the order.

6. "*Squad—Three*" (*Squad—Teen*): Cut the right hand to the side as in the third movement of the Slope from the order.

Common faults:

- (i) Failing to get the magazine square to the front,
- (ii) Letting the left elbow move outward and forward,
- (iii) Putting the fingers of the right hand in front of the sling.

Section 16

68. Secure From The Order, Order From The Secure.

Secure from the Order.

1. "*Secure Arms By Numbers, Squad—One*". (*Gintise Sambhal Shastra, Squad—Ek*): Throw the rifle upwards and in front of the right shoulder with a flick of the right wrist, keeping the elbow into the side; catch the rifle with the right hand at the point of balance so that the forearm is parallel to the ground, hand in line with the waist belt, and the rifle perpendicular, magazine to the front.

2. "*Squad—Two*" (*Squad Do*): Throw the rifle across the body, catching it at the point of balance with the left hand so that the rifle is in the same position as in the first movement, except that it is in front of the left shoulder; at the same time cut the right arm to the side.

3. "*Squad—Three*" (*Squad Teen*): Force the bolt action under the left armpit in the position of the Secure.

Common faults First Movement:

- (i) Looking at the rifle. Second

Movement:

- (ii) Transferring the rifle from one hand to another. Third Movement:
- (iii) Failing to pull the bolt action back under the armpit. *Order from the Secure.*

4. "*Order Arms By Numbers, Squad—One*" (*Gintise Baju Shatra, Squad—Ek*): Seize the rifle with the right hand at the place where it is held at the Order.

5. "*Squad—Two*" (*Squad Do*): Force the butt down and pull the rifle to the right side, striking it with the left hand as in the second movement of the Order from the Slope.

6. **"Squad—Three" (Squad Teen):** As in the third movement of the Order from the Slope.

Common faults: First Movement:

(i) Right elbow away from the body and heel of the hand not against the stock.

Second Movement:

(ii) Swinging the butt too far in front of the body. Third Movement:

(iii) As in the third movement of the Order from the Slope.

Section 17

69. Change Arms At The Trail

1. **"Change Arms By Numbers, Squad—One" (Gintise Badal Shastra, Squad—Ek):** Force the rifle to a perpendicular position in front of the right shoulder without moving the upper arms, as in the first movement of the Secure from the Order (Sec. 16.)

2. **"Squad—Two" (Squad Do):** Throw the rifle across the body as in the second movement of the Secure from the Order.

3. **"Squad—Three" (Squad Teen):** Straighten the left arms to the side to bring the rifle to the trail.

Common faults:

Ponderous movement of the rifle and movement of the body.

NOTE: To change back to the right side follow exactly the reverse procedure.

Section 18

70. Ground Arms, Take Up Arms.

Ground Arms from the Order,

1. **"Ground Arms By Numbers, Squad—One" (Gintise Bhumi Shastra, Squad—Ek):** Bend down and place the rifle on the ground at the right side, magazine to the right, outer band in line with the right toe. The right hand will be in line with the toe as the rifle is placed on the ground, muzzle pointing to the front. Head and eyes kept in the front during this movement.

NOTE: While securing down, legs should be kept straight.

2. **"Squad—Two" (Squad Do):** Return smartly to the position of attention.

Take up Arms.

3. **"Take up Arms By Numbers, Squad—One" (Gintise Uthao Shastra,**

Squad Ek): Bend down and seize the rifle with the right hand at the outer band.

4. "*Squad—Two*" (*Squad Do*): Pick up the rifle and return smartly to the position of Order.

NOTE: If a squad is stood to attention with rifles and it is required to stand the rifles against a wall, tree, etc., instead of grounding arms, the order will be "Rifles against the wall (etc.)—move". On this command the squad will turn to the right, pause, break off, place their rifles against the wall and fall in again in the same places.

Common faults:

In both movements:

- (i) Looking on the ground thereby causing head-dress to fall off
- (ii) Banging the rifle on the ground.
- (iii) The outer band of the rifle not in line with the right toe.

Section 19

71. The Short Trail (Santoi Shastra)

No Word of Command.

Raise the rifle about three inches from the ground keeping otherwise in the position of the Order.

If standing with ordered arms and directed to close to the right or left, to step back, or to take any named number of paces, men will do short Trail.

Section 20

72. To Sling Arms. (Latka Shastra)

1. With Unfixed Bayonets.

Sling Arms. The sling of the rifle having been loosened to the full extent the policeman will pass his head and right arm between the sling and rifle, muzzle upwards, rifle hanging diagonally across the back.

2. With fixed Bayonets

Sling Arms: The sling of the rifle having been loosened sufficiently, the rifle will be slung by passing the sling over the right or left shoulder, with the rifle hanging in a perpendicular position behind the shoulder.

March At—Ease

On this order, when marching with the rifle at the slope

pull the rifle down the left side as in the first movement of the order from the slope and then sling arms as above. Simultaneous action is not necessary.

73. The Present From Order

1. "Present Arms By Numbers, Squad-One" (Gintise Salami Shastra, Squad Ek):

As the first motion of Slope from Order.

2. "Aquad—two" (Squad—Do) :

Bring the rifle to the perpendicular position as in the 2nd motion of Present from the Slope.

3. "Squad—Three" (Squad—Teen):

As in the third motion of the Present from the Slope

THE ORDER FROM THE PRESENT

4. "Order Arms By Numbers, Squad—One" (Giniise Baju Shastra, Squad Ek):

Carry the rifle to the right side and seize it with the right hand, with the left hand stretched out and together resting lightly on the nose cap, butt just clear of the ground; at the same time bring the right foot smartly upto left.

5. "Squad—Two" (Squad—Do)

Place the butt quietly on the ground as at the Order, cutting the left hand away to the side.

Section 22

74. On Guard From The Slope

1. "On Guard by Numbers, Squad—One". (Gintise Tan Shastra Squad—Ek)

Seize the rifle at the small of the butt with right hand as in the first movement of the Port.

2. "Squad—Two" (Squad—Do)

Bend the left knee and place the foot flat on the ground 27 inches in front of the right foot, keep the knee slightly bent and incline the body a little forward so that the weight is on the left leg, with the left shoulder forward; keep the right leg braced back with the foot flat on the ground; force the head forward. At the same time force the rifle down in front of the right shoulder, seizing it high as possible with the left hand so that the upper arm is slightly bent and against the body; bayonet at the throat-level, butt outside the right hip, magazine underneath, the right forefinger outside the trigger guard, with the hand just in front of the right thigh and the forearm pressing on the top of the butt.

The Slope From On Guard

1. "Slope Arms by Numbers, Squad—One" (Gintise Kandhe Shastra, Squad—Ek)

Bend the left knee and place the left heel against the right, straightening the body and the head to the position of attention. At the same time pull the rifle back across the body driving the butt in heel of the left hand as in the second movement of the Slope from Order.

2. "Squad—Two" (Squad—Do)

Cut the right hand to the side.

Section 23

75. On Guard From the Order, Order From The Guard

1. "On—Guard (Tan Shastra)

Throw the rifle up in front of the right shoulder and adopt the On Guard position, bringing both the hands on the rifle at the same time.

2. "Order Arms By Numbers, Squad—One" (Gintise Baju Shastra, Squad—Ek)

Bend the left knee and place the left heel against the right, straightening the body to position of attention. At the same time seize the rifle with the right hand at the position of the Order in the same way as in Order from Examine.

3. "Squad—Two (Squad Do)

Bring the rifle to the right side as in the second movement of the Order from Examine.
Cut the left hand to the side.

Section 24

76. High Port From Slope And Vice Versa

1. "High Port By Numbers, Squad—One" (*Gintixe Uncha Baen Shastra, Squad—Ek*)

Seize the rifle at the small of the butt with the right hand as for the Port from the Slope.

2. "Squad—Two" (Squad—Do)

Force the rifle to the high Port Position in front of the body, turning the magazine to the front, seizing the rifle with the left hand.

3. "Slope Arms By Numbers, Squad—One" (*Gintise Kandhe Shastra, Squad—Ek*)

Bring the rifle to the shoulder as in the 2nd movement of the Slope from Order.

4. "Squad—Two" (Squad—Do)

Cut the right hand away.

Section 25

77. High Port From Order And Vice Versa

1. "High Port" (*Uncha Baen Shastra*)

With a flick of the right wrist, throw the rifle diagonally across the front of the body, seizing it simultaneously with both hands, left hand in front of the left shoulder and sufficiently far in front of the body for the butt to be brought instantly to the firing position and right hand on the small of the butt with the right forearm parallel to the ground.

2. "Order Arms By Numbers, Squad—One" (*Gintise Baju Shastra, Squad—Ek*)

As for the Order from the Port except that the back of the right hand is on the top of the rifle.

3. "Squad—Two" (Squad—Do)

As for Order from the Port.

4. "Squad—Three" (Squad—Teen)

As for the Order from the Port.

Section 26

78. From Order Arms to Shoulder Arms (From Bazu Shastra to Bagal Shastra) and Vice Versa

(a) From Order Arms to Shoulder Arms (From Bazu Shastra to Bagal Shastra)

- (i) On the word of command 'Ginti se Bagal Shastra Squad Ek' the rifle is thrown up and the right hand middle finger will hold the trigger guard and the left hand will simultaneously come across the stomach in front of the outer flank. On 'Squad — 2' The left hand will then be brought down sharply to the side.

(b) Shoulder Arms to Order Arms (Bagal Shastra to Bazu Shastra)

(i) On the word of command 'Ginti Se Bazu Shastra Squad Ek'; The middle finger of the right hand will leave the trigger guard and the rifle is allowed to slide down with the right hand taking up the portion near the outer band and the left hand simultaneously coming across the (abdomen near the nose-cap) body, steadying the rifle at the same time with the fingers stretched out and together resting lightly on the nose-cap.

(ii) On Squad-Do

The rifle will come down to the savdhan position and the left hand will be cut and brought to the left side.

CHAPTER XII

SWORD DRILL

The sword is a traditional badge of rank and honor. This drill is used for ceremonial purposes only. The main qualities that must be sought are accuracy and swift but graceful movement.

A sword is divided into two constituent portions, *i.e.* Hilt and Blade. The Blade has three divisions:

- (i) **Fore.** The portion near the hilt.
- (ii) **Middle** . The central portion of the blade.
- (iii) **Feeble.** The lowest portion of the blade.

The Hilt is composed of three distinct parts:

- (i) **Pommel.** The knob on the handle.
- (ii) **Handle.** The portion from where the sword is taken into grip.
- (iii) **Hilt.** The Part in front of the handle, which protects the finger.

The sword must always be worn with a sword knot made of approved pattern.

Section 1

79. Sword Drill Movements

1. Position of Attention

Hold the scabbard with the left hand, left arm straight (Left arm bent outside the hilt when the sword is not drawn), back of the hand to the left, thumb round the front forefinger pointing down the scabbard, other fingers curled round the back. This position of the left hand is maintained throughout drill except when standing at ease with sword not drawn.

2. Draw Sword By Numbers,

Squad One (Gintise Nikal Kirch, Squad—Ek)

In one movement carry the right hand across the body, grasp the handle and draw out the blade until the forearm is horizontal and in line with the shoulder. The back of the hand is to the rear, fingers and thumb round the handle.

Squad—Two (Squad—Do)

Draw the sword sharply forward and upward allowing the shoe of the scabbard to move slightly to the rear. Resume the position of attention with left hand.

Recover Position. (Khada Kirch)

As soon as the point of the sword leaves the mouth of the scabbard, bring it sharply to the position of the recover, *i.e.* with the blade perpendicular, edge to the left, upper part of the hilt in line with and opposite the mouth, thumb towards the mouth on the side of the handle.

Squad—Three (Squad Teen) Position of the Carry— (Samne Kirch)

Force the right arm to the side, elbow close in forearm horizontal and to the front. Blade perpendicular, edge to the front, the grip held lightly, other fingers together and slightly curled, hilt resting on the upper part of the hand.

3. Slope Swords (Kandhe Kirch)

Drop the point of the sword to the rear so that the back of the blade rests midway between the neck and the point of the shoulder. Keep the forearm and hand still but release the grip with the last three fingers and put the little finger behind the handle.

**4. Return Sword By
Numbers, Squad One
(Gintise Wapas Kirch
Squad—Ek)**

Force the hilt over to the hollow of the left shoulder, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, right forearm horizontal and elbow in line with the shoulder, back of the hand to the front. At the same time push the shoe of the scabbard a little to the rear. Grip the mouth of the scabbard with the left hand and immediately force the point of the sword downwards outside the left shoulder with a quick turn of the right wrist and put it in the scabbard guiding the blade home with the forefinger. Force the blade home to assume the position of the first motion of Draw Swords. Keep the shoulders square to the front.

**Squad—Two
(Squad—Do)**

Force the sword home in the scabbard and resume the position of Attention with the left hand and the scabbard. The right hand remains on top of the hilt, back of the hand upwards, fingers and thumb close together and straight, forearm horizontal and close to the body.

Squad—Three (Squad Teen)

Cut the Right hand to the side.

**5. Squad Stand at Ease.
(Squad Vishram)**

(i) With the sword in the scabbard.

Carry the left foot and the scabbard about 12 inches to the left, so that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet. At the same time, carry the hand behind the back and place the back of the right hand in the palm of the left, grasping it lightly with the fingers and thumb, and allow the arms to extend easily to their full extent.

(ii) With the sword drawn from the Slope

Carry the left foot about 12 inches to the left, the sword brought to Slope (Kandhe Kirch) position on the right shoulder. The left hand grasping the scabbard as in the position of Attention.

6. Attention from Stand at Ease, Squad—Attention (Vishram se savdhan Squad Savdhan)

Bring the sword to the carry and come to attention.

7. Quick—March (Tez Chal)

The sword or empty scabbard is kept steady at the side by the left hand. If the sword is drawn the position of the same will be as described in General Notes given below.

8. Squad—Halt (Squad Thorn)

Assume the position of attention.

Section—2

80. Saluting With The Sword

1. Saluting at the Halt (Thorn kar Siloot Kama)

Salute to the Front by Numbers — Bring the sword up to the recover.

Squad one (Gintise Samne

Siloot, Squad—Ek)

Squad—Two (Squad—Do)

Lower the sword until the point is 12 inches from the ground and directed to the right at an angle of 45 degree from the front, edge to the left, right arm and sword in one straight line, thumb flat on the handle of the sword.

Squad—Three (Squad Teen)

Bring the sword to the recover.

Squad –Four(Squad Char)

Return, to the position of carry.

NOTE:

- (i) When the sword is not drawn, the normal salute with the hand is given.
- (ii) When on parade with troops armed with the rifle and the Present is ordered, officers with swords will work on the first and third motions of the Present. On the order 'Slope Arms' they will work with the men.
- (iii) When the order 'Fall out the Officers' is given, they will salute with the sword, form up in rear of the senior officer and will return swords before standing at case.

2.saluating On the Move

In both slow and quick time the salute will be performed in two motions, the first and second motions being done, respectively, when the right and left feet come to the ground continuously one after the other, immediately after the word of command which are given when the left foot comes to the ground.

The motions are to be done as follows:—

(a) While Saluting:

- (i) ***First Motion:*** The words of command are given when the left foot comes to the ground. When the next right foot comes to the ground, bring the sword to recover face kept straight.

(ii)Second Motion: When the left foot comes to the ground next, turn the head towards the reviewing officer and dip the sword as described in Para 9.

(b) While Coming to Eyes Front After the Salute is Over.

(i)First Motion: The words of command to come to Eyes Front are given when the left foot comes to the ground. When the next right foot comes to the ground, come to the Recover position, head turned to the front.

(ii)Second Motion: When the left foot comes to the ground next, bring the sword to Carry position.

Section—3

81. General Notes

(i) At the halt, the sword is normally at the Carry when the men are at attention or with arms sloped.

(ii) On the more the sword is sloped on stepping off and brought to the Carry on halting except on the following occasions when the sword will always be at the Carry.

(a) On turning or wheeling on to or reaching the saluting base.

(b)When falling in or falling out the officers.

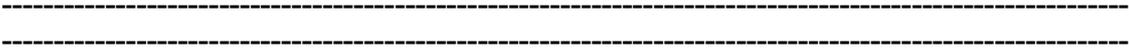
(c)When advancing in Review Order.

(d)When Guard Mounting.

(e)Swords, if drawn, will be at the Carry throughout, except when the men are standing at ease and when marching to and from a parade ground (but clear of it) when they will be at the slope,

(iii)When the men march at ease without slinging, the sword will be sloped.

(iv)When the men march at ease with rifles slung, the sword will be returned. On marching to attention, swords will be drawn again, working on the left foot.



CHAPTER XIII

EXTENDED ORDER DRILL

Section 1

82. Introduction

Control of a force in field, particularly when extended or deployed can be exercised far better by signals, than by verbal or written messages. When a force has actually to be committed to a definite form of action against dacoits, full instructions should be given by the Commander whenever possible. But during the march and at all times when quickness of movement is the first and main essential, control by signals should be used, provided the conditions are suitable.

The rifle will normally be carried at the trail when moving in Extended order in line. Correct dressing and keeping steps are not required, but an approximate line should be kept. Otherwise, when extended, men might come in the line of fire of other members of their party. Commanders should place themselves where they can best supervise their commands. It should be explained that as extensions are usually made in order to develop fire or avoid loss of life they are normally carried out at the double. An extended line is closed only when under cover or when not under fire. Closing is, therefore, carried out in quick time, unless it is desired to close on the move. Unless otherwise ordered men extend and close from or to the center file which should be named.

Before deploying a squad or platoon for field drill, it should be dressed, numbered and the center file proved by giving the following caution:

"No.....Center File and File of Direction, the Objective is....."
(Number.... .Madhya File aur Disha Ke File—Udheshya Hai)

At this command the men of the given file will prove by raising the disengaged arm. If it is required to march by a flank the front rank man of the file on that flank will move.

When deploying the squad or platoon by signal, a short blast of the whistle (*i.e.*, the cautionary blast) will be blown whenever possible before the signal is made, in order to attract the attention of the men. When the commander is satisfied that his signals are understood, the commander will drop his hand to his side on which the units under him will act as ordered.

Figures given below refer to Chapter XIII Pages 57 -90

FIELD SIGNALS—EXTENDED ORDER DRILL

Deploy from the centre

Deploy to the right



Fig. No 1



Fig. No. 2

Deploy to left

Advance

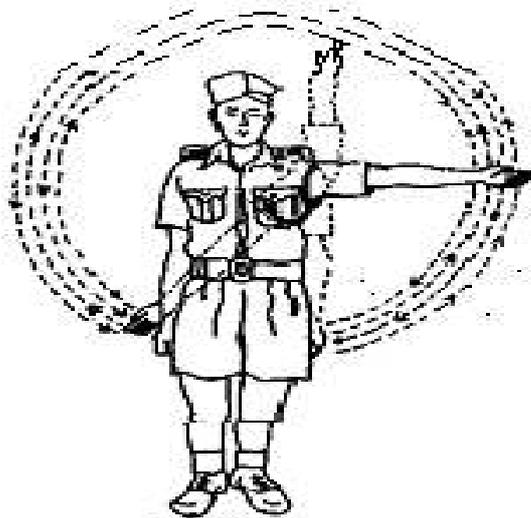


Fig. No. 3

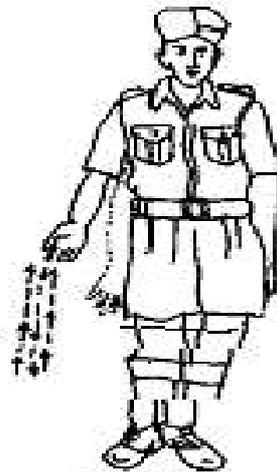


Fig. No. 4

Halt



**Fig.
No.
5**

**Retire
or about
turn**



Fig. No. 6

**Change
direction
right**

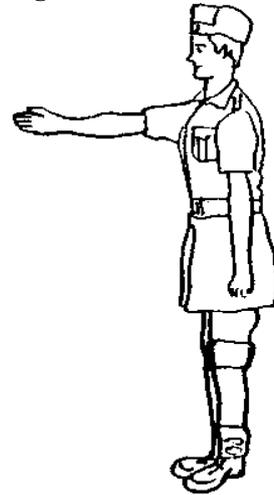


Fig. No. 7

Change direction left

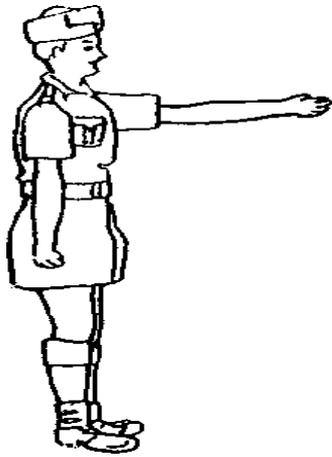


Fig. No. 8

Right Incline or turn

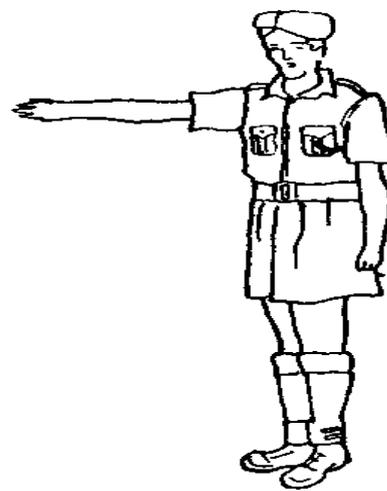


Fig. No. 9

Left Incline or turn

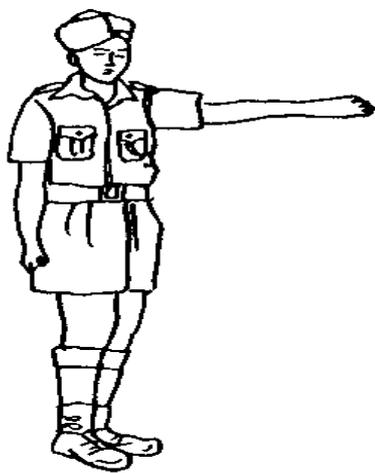


Fig. No. 10

Close on the center



Fig. No. 11

Close on the right

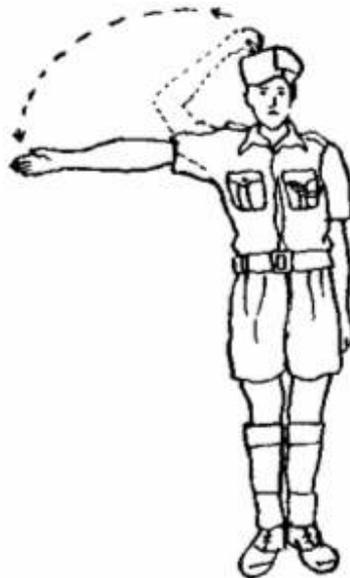


Fig. No. 12

Close on the left

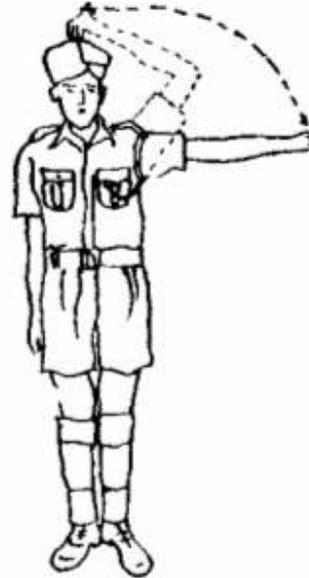


Fig. No. 13

Break into Double Time



Fig. No. 14

Break into Quick Time



Fig. No. 15

Follow Me



Fig. No. 16

Lie down
लेटना

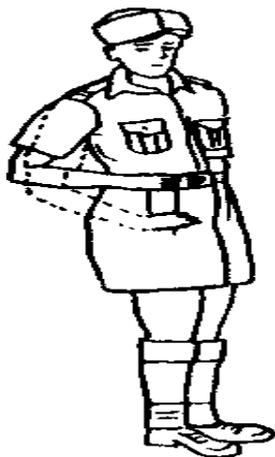


Fig No. 17

As you were



Fig
No.
18

Enemy in sight in small
numbers

दुश्मन कम तादाद में नज़र आना



Fig
No.
19

Enemy in sight in large
numbers



Fig No.20

No enemy in sight

दुश्मन नज़र नहीं आना



Fig No. 21

The signals mentioned in Sections 3 and 4 will also be made use of during Field Exercises.

The following words of command and signals by hand will be used for deploying a squad from the front, centre, and rear.

Section 2

83. Works of Command

(a) DEPLOYING

To the right extend (Dahine Phail): At this command the left guide of the rear rank will remain stationary and the remaining men of the middle, front and rear ranks will extend to the right into single rank as follows:—

All except the left guide of the rear rank will turn to the right. The front rank men will move first followed by the center and rear ranks to an interval of two paces between each person. All will then turn to the left and come to Stand-at-Ease (Vishram) position.

To the left extend (Baen Phail): Same as for above except that in this case the right guide of the front rank will remain stationary and the remaining men of the middle, rear and front ranks will extend to the left.

From the center extend (Madhye Se Phail): At this command the center man of the middle rank will remain stationary and the remaining men of the front, rear and middle ranks will extend to the right and left respectively.

NOTE: If the number of paces is not indicated, men will extend to two paces.

(b) CLOSING

On the right close (Dahine Simatt): At this command the right guide of the front rank will remain stationary and the remaining men of the front rank, and middle and rear ranks will close up to the right in their original order.

On the left close (Baen Simatt): At this command the left guide of the rear rank will remain stationary and the remaining men of the rear middle and front ranks will close up to the left in their original order.

On the center close (Madhye Par Simatt): At this command the middle ranks will close on the center man who will remain stationary and the front and rear ranks will left turn and right turn and close in their original order.

Section 3

84. Signals With The Hand

Extending to the right: The right arm extended to the full extent over the head and waived slowly from side to side, the hand to be open and to come down as low as the hips on both sides of the body three times and then pointed to the right. See **fig. 2.**

Action by platoon: As described in section 2 above.

Extending to the left: Same as for 'Extending to the Right'. Instead of right arm, left arm will be used for signaling. See **fig. 3.**

Action by Platoon: As described in section 2 above.

Extending from the center: Same as for 'Extending to the Right' except that after the third swing of the hand, the hand will be dropped straight down to the position of Attention. See **fig. 1.**

Action by Platoon: As described in section 2 above.

NOTE: In the above movements it should be remembered that the front rank will always be on the right side.

Close: The hand placed on top of the head, the elbow to be square to the right or left according to which hand is used. The above signal denotes 'Close on the Center'. See **fig. 11.**

If it is required to close on a flank (right or left) the commander will point to the required flank before dropping his hand. See **figs. 12 and 13.**

If when on the march, it is required to halt as well as close, the commander will give the halt signal before dropping the hand.

Advance : The arm swung from rear to front below the shoulder. See **fig. 4.**

Halt : The arm raised to the full extent above the head.. See **fig. 5.** **Retire :** The arm circled above the head, three times. See **fig. 6.**

Change direction right (or left) : The right or left arm is extended in line with the shoulder. A circular movement is then made, on completion of which the arm and body should point in the required direction. See **figs. 7 and 8.**

Right (or left) incline or turn: The body turned in the required direction and the arm extended in line with the shoulder and pointing in the required direction. See **figs. 9**

Wheeling to the right or left : The opposite hand, *i.e.*, for Right Wheel left hand, and for Left Wheel right hand is extended in line with the shoulder. A circular movement is then made, on completion of which the arm and body should point in the required direction.

Double : The clenched hand moved up and down between the thigh and shoulder. See. **fig. 14.**

Quick March from double: Bend the right elbows with the palm of the hand open and facing the men and then drop it smartly. See fig. 15.

Follow me: -The arm swung from rear to front above the shoulder. See. fig. 16.

As you were: The arm extended downwards with the hand open and waived across the body parallel to the ground. See fig. 18.

Kneeling position. : Bend right knee slightly and indicate signal by touching the knee three times.

Lying position: Two or three slight movements with the open hand towards the ground (Palm downwards). See fig. 17.

Section 4

85. Signals With The Rifle

The following communicating signals will be made with the Rifles.

Enemy in sight in small numbers: The rifle held above the head at the full extent of the arm and parallel with the ground, muzzle pointing to the front. See fig. 19.

Enemy in sight in large numbers: The rifle held as in the previous signal, but raised and lowered frequently. See fig. 20.

No enemy in sight: The rifle held up to the full extent of the arm, muzzle uppermost. See fig. 21

NOTE: These signals may be used by Scouts, etc., sent ahead of their sections; care should be taken that the signals cannot be seen by the enemy.

Enemy center of resistance holding up advance: Place head gear on a rifle and point in the direction from which fire is coming.

Section 5

86. Control By Whistle Blasts

The following whistle blasts are used:

Cautionary blast (A short-blast)—to draw attention to a signal or order about to be given.

The alarm blast (A succession of alternate long and short blasts)—to turn out men from Camps or bivouacs to fall in, or to occupy previously arranged positions.

The Rally Blast (A succession of short blasts).

To denote close on the leader in wood, bushes, darkness or crowd, when the manual signal cannot be seen.

On the above blast being given, the men will double towards the sound of the whistle and will rally on the leader facing in the same direction.

CHAPTER XIV

STREET LINING

General: Street lining is generally done on occasions of important melas, religious festivals, for passing vehicular and pedestrian traffic and for protection of VIPs. This is generally done without arms, but on important occasions the duties may be performed with lathis and also weapons.

Strength: The force employed should be according to the length of the road or area to be guarded and as far as possible the number of men should be enough to maintain proper control and inter-communication.

Formations: For Street Lining, a platoon or company generally falls in two ranks, unless the road has to be divided into two parts for passing vehicular and pedestrian traffic, or when men are short and a greater distance has to be covered up, in which case the squad or platoon has to be brought into single file from two ranks.

Deployment: For deploying the platoon or company for the above movements, it is generally opened out from the rear by bringing it in the center of the road and then turning it to the required direction of the road which has to be guarded.

Dressing: The dressing in all the formations is taken from the guides who opens out first.

Men will open out and close at the Slope Arms. When required interval has been achieved, each file will Order Arms and Stand-At-Ease together. Similarly when ordered to close, each file will come to Attention and Slope Arms together and then move off.

Section 1

87. For Guarding A Road On Both Sides.

1. Street Lining from the rear on both sides of the road.....Paces extend Quick March.

(Sarak Ke Dono Taraf Pichhe Se-Kadam Khol kar Line Bana—Tez chat)

2. Action. At this command the platoon or company which is in two ranks will move in the direction of the road which has to be guarded.

Both Men in the rear file on the command 'Quick March' will touch the men in front and at the same time wheel outward and after they have reached the edge of the road will halt and about turn. If with

arms, both will Order Arms and Stand At Ease together. Similarly, each file will carry out the same procedure as the rear file.

NOTE : If the squads are on the move, the command 'Quick March' will be omitted.

No definite pace can be given for the distance; in each case therefore, the men will halt at the edge of the road.

88. Closing.

1. On Right/Left, Close (*Dahine/Baen, Simati*)

2. Action: The File on the Right/Left Flank will come to attention, take a step forward, slope arms, turn inwards and march down in front of their respective ranks. When all the files have moved out, the following order will be given.

Inward About Wheel (Ander Ko Pichhe Ghoom)

The men of the leading file will wheel inwards and at the same time close their distance to two paces.

Note : The Right and Left Flanks of the squad will be according to the original formation of the squad.

Section 3

89. For Guarding A Road On Both Sides Alternately.

For deploying the platoon or company alternately it will be turned in the required direction and the following command will be given.

Form Single File—Quick March (Ek File Bana—Tez Chal)

On getting this command the front rank men will march forward. The rear rank will follow the front rank in single file. (If the platoon/ Coy. is already marching in the file the portion 'quick march (Tez chal)' of the words of command should be omitted.)

When single file has been formed the following orders will be given.

1. Street Lining From The Rear On Both Sides Of The Road Alternately....Paces Extend.

(Sarak ke Dono Taraf Pichhese Bari Bart.... Kadam Khol kar Line Bana).

2. Action : On the command 'Extend' the rear rank man will touch the man in front of him and at the same time will wheel to the right; the front rank man similarly will wheel to the left. After completing the interval, they will halt at the edge of the road and about turn. Similar action will be done by the remaining men of the rear and front ranks.

If with arms, each man will order arms and stand at ease simultaneously.

Note: Single file can also be formed from at the halt. If the formation is to be made from at the halt the command "Quick March' will be added after 'Extend'.

90. Closing.

1. *On the Right/Left Close (Dahine/Baen Simatt)*

2. **Action :** Same as in section 84. The farthest man on the extreme flank who has been ordered to close will march first and when he comes in line with his original pair, both will move off together.

Section 5

91. For Deploying A Platoon Or Company From The Center.

1. For deploying a platoon or company from the center, the center man will first be proved. The following command will then be given:

2. (i) *Street Lining From the Center on Both Sides of the Road, Ranks Outward Turn.*

(Sarak ke Dono Taraf Madhya se Khol kar Line Bana—Linen Bahar Mur)

At this command the ranks on the right and left of the center men will turn outwards. The center men of the rear rank will turn about.

(ii) *From the Rear. Paces Extend Quick March (Pichhe Se.Kadam Khol Kar Tej Chal)*

3. **Action.:** At the command "*Quick march,*" the center men will advance to the front and rear and take up positions on the side of the road, halt, turn about, and order arms (if armed).

The remaining ranks (*i.e.*, ranks on the left and right of the center men) will act as in Section 1 and after achieving the required interval, dress up from the center man of their ranks.

4. **Closing:** - If it is desired to close at the center, the following command will be given.

5. *On the Center Close. (Madhya Simatt)*

6. **Action, (i)** The center men will advance forward and form up in the middle of the road at two paces interval in the original formation. The remaining men will close up on the right and left of the center men and turn in the required direction which they faced originally.

(ii) The ranks could also be closed as given in Section 1.

Section 6

92. For Dividing A Road Into Two Halves For Passing Vehicular And Pedestrian Traffic.

“After the formation of single file as described in Section 3 the following commands will be given “:---

1. Street Lining From The Rear Down The Center Facing Outward. Paces Extend.
(*Sarak ke Madhye Bahar Munh karte Hue Pichhe se.kadam khol kar Line Bana*)

2. Action. On the command 'Extend' the rear rank man will touch the man in front of him and at the same time come to the halt and about turn. The remaining men will similarly touch the men in front after taking the required paces and halt, the front rank men turning to the left and the rear rank men to the right. The last man will halt and face in the same direction in which the line is moving. After each man has taken his position, he will come to Order Arms and Stand At Ease.

Section 1

93. Closing

1. On the Right Close. (*Dahine Simatt*)

Action. On the command Close, two men on the left of the front and rear rank will come to attention and slope arms. The rear rank man, who is in the extreme end, will turn to his left and move off wheeling to the left.

When the Rear end man has come in line will the second man of Rear Rank, the second man will move off along with him to the right.

The remaining men of the ranks when these two men are nearing them, will come to attention, slope arms and follow them.

When all the men have thus joined their ranks and formed two ranks, the following words of command will be given.

'Outward About Wheel' (*Bhar Se Pichhe Ghoom*)

At this command both the guides will outward about wheel and at the same time close their distance and maintain their usual two paces interval between ranks.

CHAPTER XV

COMPANY DRILL

The movements in Company Drill incorporate most of the basic movements of squad and platoon drill detailed in this Manual.

Company Drill, well conducted, is of great value in building up the morale and confidence of the company. It also provides an opportunity to practice junior leaders in giving words of command and in asserting their power of command.

Company Drill should at first be preceded by a lecture to the officers, under-officers and men to ensure that they understand the formation and movements to be done. Officers and under-officers should change places during drill so that all are practiced.

Section 1

94. Strength Of A Company

The strength of a Police Company normally consists of the following officers and men. The rank and strength of the officers and platoon may differ from State to State.

| <i>Designation</i> | <i>Strength</i> | <i>Rank</i> |
|---|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| (i) Coy. Commander | One | Gazetted/Inspector |
| (ii) Platoon Commanders | Three | Inspector/Sub-Inspector. Senior |
| (iii) Coy. Have. Major One (C.H.M.) | One | Havaldar. |
| (iv) Coy. Qr. Master havaldar (C.Q.M.H.) | One | Next Senior. |
| (v) Platoon Havaldar | Three | Third Senior |
| (vi) Platoon | Three* | Hd. Constables and Constables. |

Note: *A Platoon normally consists of 6 Havaldars, and thirty constables

The Platoon Havaldar is the senior most from amongst the Havaldars in a platoon.

Section 2

95. Formations And Positions Of Officer And Under Officers.

1. The following are the formations in Company Drill:

- (i) Line
- (ii) Column of Threes.
- (iii) Column of Platoons.
- (iv) Close Column of Platoons.
- (v) Line of Platoon in Threes.
- (vi) Column of Route.

2. Line.

Line is the formation in which the three platoons form up side by side with three paces interval between each platoon, *i.e.*, No. 1 platoon on the right No. 2 in the middle and No. 3 platoon on the extreme left. The position of the Platoon Commanders is in the center and three paces ahead of their respective platoons. The C.H.M. will be level with the center platoon havaldar, but one file on his right and the C.Q.M.H. one file to his left.

3. Column of Threes.

Column of threes is the same as Line but facing a flank. The officers will be on the directing flank. If this flank is changed officers and the supernumerary rank will move clockwise round platoons to gain their positions—on the march in double time, at the halt in quick time.

4. Column and Close Column of Platoons.

Column of Platoons is the formation in which the platoons are one behind the other at a distance equal to their own length plus three paces, *e.g.*, the distance between the first and the second platoons is the frontage of the platoon plus three paces.

In close column the distance between each platoon is the same (*i.e.*, 7 or 12 paces), but in Column the distance will vary with any variation in the strength of platoons.

For normal purposes Close column of Platoons will be formed at 12 paces distance. This is measured between the heels of the rear rank of the leading platoon and those of the front rank of the next platoon. The distance is based on the room required to open ranks for inspection. For Drill seven paces is more convenient.

5. Line of Platoon in Threes.

This is the formation in which the platoons are in Three- formation with the leading Threes of all the Three platoons in one line. The distance between platoons depends upon the order given. The position of the Platoon Commanders will be three paces in front and in center of their respective platoons.

6. Column of Route.

This is the same as Column of Threes except that all officers and supernumeraries are in the ranks, the Company Commander leading Position of Platoon Commanders will be three paces ahead of their respective platoons. The C.H.M. will be in level with the platoon commander of the leading platoon and the C.Q.M.H. will be in the rear of No. 3 Platoon. Platoon Havaldars will be in the rear of their respective platoons.

NOTE: Company and Platoon Commanders will break ranks to supervise the marching and if necessary to give a word of command or pay a compliment.

When marching along a road the column should be kept well into the side of the road, so as to allow other traffic to pass.

Section 3

96. Dressing.

1. On being halted in line column or close column, a company will always be dressed.

2. On the command "Right Dress" (Dahine Saj)—

- (a) The men dress by the right.
- (b) The officers in front of the company turn about together as the men turn off their heads, and supervise the dressing and covering off. They take up their dressing by the flank of direction.
- (c) The Company Havaldar Major turns to his right and marches out five paces to the flank of the company, wheels left, halts in line with the front rank and five paces from it, turns left and dresses all three ranks in rotation. He will return to the line of the front rank having completed the dressing of the rear rank, and will give "Eyes Front" (Samne Dekh.)

The Company in Column or Close Column.

3. On the command "Right Dress' (Dahine Saj)—

- (a) The men dress by the right.
- (b) The officers turn about as the men turn their heads.

- (c) The Platoon Havaldars turn right and move out five paces to the flank of their platoons, wheel left, halt five paces away from and level with their front rank, turn left and carry on with the dressing at the command '*Steady*' given by the C.H.M. Having dressed all three ranks they will return to their position five paces from and level with their front rank, facing inwards.

NOTE: In order that the Platoon Havaldars may work together it is usual to lay down the number of paces they will take when marching out.

- (d) The C.H.M. steps off and halts six paces to the front of and facing the right hand man of the company, from which position he can check the coverign of the right-hand man of each platoon. He then turns left, moves out five paces and checks the dressing of the platoon Havaldars. On the command '*Steady*' given by the C.H.M. the platoon havaldars will carry on the dressing.
- (e) When dressing is complete, the Platoon havaldar of the leading platoon will give "*No.....Platoon, Eyes Front.*" The center Platoon havaldar repeats the order but omits the word 'platoon'. The rear platoon Havaldar gives the cautionary command in full.

On the command "*Eyes-Front '(Samne Dekh)'*" given by the rear Platoon havaldars:

- (f) The officers turn about.

- (g) The Platoon Havaldars and C.H.M. step off and return to there places.

4. If the Platoon Havaldar is not available the flank Section Commanders will dress the platoon.

5. In Company Drill each man will take up his dressing on completion of each movement. For ceremonial purposes the company should be practiced in dressing by word of command.

6. Unless otherwise ordered, a company will fall-in in Close Column of Platoons and will then be inspected. If however space does not permit of this being done, it will fall in in Line Formation.

Section 4

97. A company In Close Columns Of Platoons Falling In.

The Havaldar Major will give the command *Fall-in* upon which the right Section Commanders of each platoon will take one pace forward (at the order). They will be covered off by the Havaldar Major who will then give the command '*Steady*'. Upon this command the company will come

to attention, take a pace forward and, after a pause will take up their dressing.

On completion of the dressing, the senior officer will give the command *Stand-at-Ease*.

Section 5

98. A Company When Halted Changing Ranks

About—Turn (pichhe Mur)

The whole company will turn about except officers and supernumeraries who will regain their positions by passing round the flanks, or through the ranks.

NOTE: If it is desired to turn about without changing ranks, the command '*About Turn*' will be preceded by the caution. '*The Company will retire*' and in order to resume the original direction '*The Company will Advance*' in which case the officers and supernumeraries turn about but will not change their position.

Section 6

99. Close Column Movements

1. *A close column when halted changing direction.*

Change Direction Right—Right Wheel (Dahine Disha Badal—Dahine Ghoom)

(i) The company, except the leading will make a partial turn to the left; the leading platoon will not turn, but will look to the right.

Quick—March (Tez—Chal)

(ii) Each man will move round on the circumference of a circle, of which the right of the leading platoon is the center. The outer flank will direct, but when platoons are of an equal strength they will maintain the same relative positions as they held before the wheel. The Company Havaldar Major will superintend

the wheel on the left flank, the C.Q.M.H. on the right. Moving out after the command. Wheel the former must in regulating the pace, watch the left guide of the rear platoon, who will continue to march at a full pace throughout, and on whose movement the march of every man in the company should be made to depend.

(iii) When the company has circled round to the required angle, the command '*Forward*' (*Age barh*) or *halt* (*Tham*) will be given, on which all will at once advance in the required direction, or come to halt.

(iv) When wheeling to the left, it will be the duty of the Havaldar Major to watch the right guide of the rear platoon as above.

(v) A Close Column moving in Threes will wheel as above, the leading Three of each platoon wheeling in the same manner as the leading platoon above.

2. *A Close Column when halted forming Column of Threes, in the front or rear.*

Advance (or Retire) in Column of The Commander of the leading (or Threes from the Right, company right rear) platoon will give 'No.... left turn. 'Platoon Left Wheel Quick—March' [Dahine (Baen) Se Tino Tin Colunmand each platoon commander will act Men Age Barh (Pichhe Laut) similarly in time to gain his place in kampani Dahine Baen Mur.] the Column of Threes.

3. *Close Column when halted moving in Columns of Threes towards a flank.*

Move to the Right (or Left) in The Commander of the leading (or Column of Threes, Company Right rear) platoon will give No...Platoon (or Left) Turn. [Kampani Tino Tin Quick—March and each remaining Column Men Dahine (ya Baen) Chal, Platoon Commander will give kampani Dahine (ya Baen) Mur).

No....Platoon, Left (or Right) Wheel, Quick—March' in time to gain his place in Column of Threes.

4. A close column when halted moving to a flank in Threes.

Move To The Right (or Left) In Line of Platoon In Threes, Company Right (or Left) Turn, Quick March. [Platoonon Ki Tino Tin Ki Line Men Dahine(Ya Baen) Chal, Company Dahine (Ya Baen) Mur, Tez Chal]

The platoon on the right or left will direct unless any other platoon is detailed. (This formation can also be done while the Coy. is on the move. To do this, the words 'Quick March (Tez Chal) should be omitted from the words of command.

On the Left Form Line, Remainder Left Turn, Quick March. (Baen Ko Line Band. Baki Baen Mur, Tez Chal).

5. A Close Column when halted forming line facing in the same direction.

The leading platoon will stand fast. The remainder will be led by their guides by the shortest route to the spot where their inner flank will rest. Each platoon will then wheel parallel to the alignment and when opposite to its place in line will be halted and turned to the right by its commander.

By The Left, At The Halt, Facing Left Form Line, (Baen Se Thamkar Baen Disha Line Bana).

6. A Close Column on the march forming line at the halt, facing a flank.

The Commander of the rear platoon will at once give *At the Halt Left-Form*. Each of the other commanders will form his platoon into line in like manner when it arrives at column distance from the platoon next in rear.

Advance In Column (Column Men Age Barh).

7. Advancing or retiring in column from close.

The commander of the leading platoon will give *No....Platoon will Advance, By the Right, Quick March. (No.....Platoon Age Barhega, Dahine Se, Tez Chal)* and the remaining Platoons will be similarly marched off when the platoon next in front has reached column distance.

*Retire In Column, Company About Turn
(Column Men Pichhe Laut, Company Pichhe
Mur.J*

Platoon commanders will turn about and march their platoons in succession at column distance giving the command. *No...Platoon will Retire, About Turn, by the left, Quick March (No....Platoon, Pichhe Lautegi, Pachee Mur, Baen Se Tez Chal).*

9. Close column on the march opening to Column.

*On No...,Platoon Form Column of platoons.
Remainder Mark time.(No... Platoon Par
Platoonon Ki Kalam Bana, Baki Kadam Tal)*

The leading platoon will continue to march. The other platoons will mark time and will be advanced by the respective platoon commanders when column distance is achieved.

NOTE: If it is necessary to form column at the halt, the Coy. Commander should give the words of command as follows: —

"On No....Platoon (the rear platoon) Form Column of Platoons. (No.. ..Platoon par platoonon ki Kalam Bana)." On this command the rear platoon commander will, at once, bring his platoon to halt after which the other platoon commanders will bring their platoons to halt successively when column distance is achieved.

10. A Close Column when halted opening to column.

*On No..... Platoon (Rear Platoon) Form
Column Of Platoons, Remainder Quick March,
(No... Platoon par Platoonon Ki Kalam Bana,
Baki Tez Chal).*

The rear platoon will stand fast. The remainder will step off and will be halted by their commanders on reaching their positions in Column distance.

NOTE: (i) If it is required to form column on the middle platoon, the command will be *"Column of Platoons on No...platoon (the Middle Platoon). Platoon in the Rear Will Retire, About Turn, Remainder Quick March (No...platoon par platoonon Ki Kalam Bana, Pichhe Wall Platoon Pichhe Lautegi, Pichhe Mur, Baki Tez-Chal)".* On this command the named platoon will stand fast.

Platoon in the rear will turn about All except the named platoon step off and will *be* halted by their commanders on reaching their positions in column distance. Platoon in rear will be turned at by their commanders.

(ii) If it is required to form Column of Platoons on the front platoon the command will be Form Column of Platoons No.... Platoon (Front Platoon Remainder Will Retire About Turn Quick March (No.... Platoon . Platounon Ki Kalam Bana, Baki Pichhe Lautega, Pichhe Mur, Tez Chal).

8. A close column moving to a flank in L of Platoons in Threes forming line at the hi

At the halt facing left (or right) Form Line [Tham Kar Baen (Ya Dahine) Disha Line Bana]

The Commander of the right platoon will give the command No....Platoon Halt, I(right) Turn, (No....Platoon Tham, Ba (Dahine) Mur].

The remaining platoon will be led by their guides by the shortest route into their position in line and will be turned to the left (or right by order of their commanders.

Section 7

100. Column Movements.

Change Direction —Right (Dahine Disha Badal) (No.... Platoon Dahine Ban)

1. A column on the march changing, direction.

The commander of the leading platoon will give the command 'No....Platoon, Right—Fort and when the platoon is formed in the new direction 'Forward'. (Age Barh) The remaining platoon on arriving at the same point will be formed successively in a similar manner.

Before changing direction left, a column should normally be ordered to march by the left.

2. A column when halted forming column of Threes (In the same direction).

Advance in Column of Three from the Right, Company Right Turn, Platoons Left Wheel, Quick March. (Dahine Se Tino Tin Column Men Age Barh Kampani Dahine Mur, Platoonon Baen Ghoom Tez Chal.)

At the Command 'Quick March' each platoon will wheel to the left forming Column of Threes. When a Column is on the march, platoons may, if desired, advance in Threes in succession. On the caution '*In succession Advance in Column of Threes from the Right*' (*Dahine Se, Bari Bari Tino Tin Kalam Men Age Barh*) the commander of the leading Platoon will give the order 'No...platoon Right—Turn, Left Wheel'. Platoon No...Dahine Mur, Baen Ghoom) On arriving at the same point the commander of each succeeding platoon will act in a similar manner.

NOTE: (i) When the column is on the march, Column of Threes can be done to the retire direction. For this the Coy. Commander has to give "About Turn" (if the column is not already marching in the retire direction) to the Company and then order "Retire" instead of "Advance".

(ii) When the column is on the march this formation (i.e. advancing/retiring in Column of Threes from the right/left) can be done on the words of command of the Coy. Commander. The words of command of the Coy. Commander will be: "*Advance/Retire in column of Threes from the Right/Left. Company Right/Left Turn,*

Platoons Left Wheel. (Dahine se/Baen Se Tino Tin Kalam Men Age Barh/Pichhe Laut Kampani Dahine/Baen Mur, Platoonon Baen Ghoom).

On these Words of Command all the platoons will turn to the right/left and then wheel to the left simultaneously. The platoon commanders need not give any words of command.

Move to the Right In Column of Threes Company Right Turn, Platoon On The Left To the Front Remainder Left Wheel, Quick March. (Tino Tin Column Men Dahine Chal Kampani Dahine Mur, Baen Platoon Samne Ko Baki Baen Ghoom, Tez Chal).

3. A column when halted forming column of Threes (To a flank).

The leading platoon will move in the required direction and the remaining two platoons will follow the leading platoon.

When a column is on the march, platoons may, if desired, move to the flank in threes in succession. On the caution '*In succession Move to the Right in Column of Threes'* (*Dahine Se Bari Bari Tino Tin Kalam Men Dahine Chal*) the leading platoon commander will order '*NO...Platoon Right Turn*'. The remaining platoons will follow suit on reaching platoons will follow suit on the same spot.

When a column is on the march, the Company may, if desired, move to the flank in Column of Threes on the command of the Company Commander. For this movement the words of Command will be the same as per halt except that the portions '*Quick Ma, (Tej Chal)*' should be deleted.

4. A column on the march forming facing in the same direction.

On The Left Form Line, Remainder Left Incline, Double March. (Baen Ko Line Bana Baki Adha Baen Mur, Daurke Chal).

The leading platoon will continue to advance in quick time, dressing by the right. When each platoon is immediately in the rear of its position in line it will receive from its commander "*No...Platoon Right Incline (No... Platoon, Adha Dahine Mur]* and on reaching the alignment **Break into Quick Time Quick March'** (*Tej Chal Men Aa, Tej chal*) Dressing will be by the right in each case.

If the company is halted, the command Quick March will be given instead of Double March. The leading platoon will stand fast the remainder will act as in squad drill and on reaching the alignment the command Halt instead of Break into Quick Time, Quick March will be given.

5. A column when halted forming line facing a flank.

At The Halt, facing Left Into Line, Platoons left-Form Quick march (Tham Kar, Baen Disha Line Bana Platoonon Baen Ban, Tez Chal).

The men will act as in squad drill, the left guide of each platoon acting on the Word "Form" as the pivot man of a squad.

This formation (*i.e. forming* line to a flank from Column of platoon) can also be done to a flank when the Column is on the move. For this the words of Command will be the same except that the portions '*At the Halt (Thamkar)* and '*Quick March (Tez Chal)* will be omitted. The platoons will change direction to the left simultaneously and after the formation will continue to mark time till the order to advance is given by the Coy Commander.

6. Column on the march closing to Close Column.

On No... Platoon Form Close Column of Platoons, Remainder Double March (Number Par Nikat Column Bana, Baki Daur Ke Chal).

The leading platoon will continue to advance in quick time, the remainder taking up the quick time as they gain correct distance.

NOTE: If the command is '*At the halt on No...Platoon form close column of platoons (Thamkar No...Platoon par Platoon ki Nikat Kolam Bana)*, the leading platoon will at once be halted by its commander. The remainder platoons will be halted successively on reaching their position in close column.

7. A column when halted closing to Close Column on No...Platoon Form Column..

On No...Platoon Form Close Remainder March (No... Platoon Par Nikat Par Nikat Column Bana, Baki Tez Chal).

The leading platoon will stand fast. The Column remainder will step off and will be halted by Quick their commanders on reaching their positions in Close Column.

(i) If it is required to form Close Column on any but the leading platoon, the command will be Close Column on No. .Platoon, Platoon is) in Front will Retire, About Turn. Remainder Quick March (No...Platoon Par Nikat Kalam Bana, Age Wali Platoon/Platoonon, Piche Lautega, Pichhe Mur, Baki Tez Chal).

The named platoon will stand fast, platoon (s) in front will turn about. All except the named platoon will step off and will be halted by their commanders on reaching their position in Close column, Platoon (s) in front will be turned about by their commanders.

(ii) If it is required to form on the rear platoon the command will be Close Column on No... Platoon, Remainder will retire, About Turn, Quick March. (No...Platoon Par Nikat Kalam Bana, Baki Pichhe Lautega, Pichhe Mur, Tez Chal). The movement will be carried out as above.

8. A column when halted or on the move forming Line of platoons in threes to a flank.

Move to the Right/Left in Line of Platoons in Threes, Company Right/Left Turn, (Platoonon Ki Tino Tin ke Line Me Dahine/Baen Chal, Kampani Dahine/Baen Mur).

The platoons will turn to the required direction simultaneously. When the Company is already on the march the platoons will take dressing from the leading platoon.

Section 8

101. Line Movements.

On the Right Form Column (or Close Column) of Platoons, Remainder Right Turn, Quick March (Dahine Ko Platoonon Ki Column (Ya Nikat Column) Bana, Baki Dahine Mur.

1. *A line when halted forming column (or close column) facing in the same direction*

The platoon on the right will stand fast. The remainder will be led by their guides by the shortest route to their positions in column (or close column) where they will receive from their commanders *No... Platoon Halt, Left Turn, (No... Platoon Than, Baen Mur)* On the command 'Halt', the right guides will at once turn to their left and take up their covering and distance from the right guide of the platoon in front, the platoons dressing by the right as soon as they have turned to the left.

This formation can also be done, when the line is on the move. The words of command will be the same except that the portion 'Quick March' will be omitted. On this command the leading platoon will continue to march and the remainder platoon's will act as mentioned above.

It is also possible to do the some formation when the line is marching in retire direction. The words of command will be the same except that instead of 'Advance', the words 'Retire' will be given.

NOTE: (i) This can be done on the left as well by giving the command '*On the Left Form Column (or Close Column) of Platoons, Remainder Left Turn—*

Quick March' [Platoon Baen, Ko Kalam (Ya Nikat Kalam) Bana, Baki Baen Mur—Tej Chal] when No. 3 Platoon will stand fast and no 3 Platoon. This movement can be performed at the halt (ii) A column or close column can also be made on No. Platoon by giving the following command '*On No. 2 Forum Column or Cose Clounm of Plattens,*

Remainder Inward Turn—Quick March, At the Command Quick March No. 1 Platoon will form up in front of No. 2 platoon and No.3platoon in the rear of No. 2.

2. A line when halted advancing in column of platoons.

Advance In Column Of Platoon The platoon on the right will advance From the Right, Remainder command 'Quick March'. The Turn, Quick March, Dabhine Streamlining two platoon will move to Platoon Ke Column Men Age Barh, the right and when the guides of each Baki Dabhine Mur, Tez Chal.

platoon are in the rear and covered off from the guides of the preceding platoons, the commander will give No..... Platoon Left Turn'. (No.....Platoon Baen Mur)

3. A line when halted forming column facing a flank at the halt.

At The halt Facing right ForumThe men will act as in squad drill, Column of Platoons, Platoons Right the right guide of each platoon acting From, Quick March (Thamkaras the pivot man of a squad. Dahine Disha Platoonon ki Kalam "This formation can also be done Bana Platoonon Dahine Banawhen the Company in Line on the Platoon Dahine Ban, Tez Chal). move. For this formation the words

of command will be "Company, Facing Right Form Column of Platoons, Platoons Right Form (Kampani, Dahine Disha Platoonon Ki Kalam Bana, Platoonon Dahine Ban). After this formation the command "Advance (Age Barh)" can be given. If it is necessary to do this formation at the halt, then the words Thamkar' should be prefixed to the words of command, similarly when the Company is halted in line this formation can be done to a flank without halting the Company. For this purpose the word "At the halt (Thamkar)" will be omitted from the words of command and after the formation the Company commander will give the command "Advance (Age Barh)".

NOTE: This formation cannot be

formed facing the left flank because that will change the order of the Sections.

4. *A line forming line of platoon in threes in the same direction.*

NOTE: (i) this formation can also be done when the Company is on the move in line formation. For doing this the portion "Quick March" should be omitted from the words command.

(ii) This formation can also be done towards the rear either from the halt or on the move. To do this the Company should be turned to the "Right (to the Left, if already facing the retire direction in the line formation) and then the platoons should be wheeled to the Right'.

Section 9.

102. Movement From Column Of Threes

1. A Column of Threes forming forward into Column of Platoons.

The Company will Form Column of Platoons On the Left From-Platoons. Kampani Platoon Ke Column Banaigi, Baen Platoon Bana).

(i) The man will act as in squad drill. Formation will be made on the leading guide of each platoon. When column has been formed the company commander will give **'Forward, By the Right'**.

(ii) A column of threes if desired could form column of platoons in succession, also in that case the Coy. Commander will give the command, *"the Company will Form Column of Platoons". (Kampani, bari Bari Baen Par Platoonon Ki Kalam Bana).* the commander of the leading platoon will at once give 'No...Platoon, on

the Left Form—Platoon followed by 'Forward' and on reaching the same point the remaining commanders will act in a similar manner.

(iii) This formation can also be done in such a way that the company will come to halt automatically after the formation. To do this the word of command "At the Halt" (Thamkar) should be used. This formation when required to be done when the Coy is halted in column of Threes, the word Tez ChaP should be used in the word of command at the end.

2. *A column of three forming into close column of platoons at the halt.*

At The Halt On the Left Form Close Column of Platoons [Thamkar Baen ko Platoonon ka Nikat Column Bana]

The commander of the leading platoon will at once give 'No...Platoon, at the Halt, On The Left Form—Platoon'. (No...Flatten,Thamkar Bana par Platoon Bana). The commander of the remaining platoon on arriving at close column distance will act in similar manner.

3. *A column of Threes forming column (or close column) of platoons at the halt facing a flank.*

At The Halt Facing Left From Column (or Close Column (or Close Column of Platoons, [Thamkar Baen Disha Platoon Ka Column (ya Nikat Column) Bana].

The commander of the leading platoon will halt his platoon and it to the left by giving 'No...Platoon Halt, Left Turn' (No...Platoon Tham, Baen Mur). The remainder will be led by their guides by the shortest route to their positions in column or close column where they will receive the command 'No...Platoon Halt, Left Turn'. On the word of Command Halt the

right guides will at once turn to their left and take up their covering and distance from the right guide of the platoon in from.

4. *A column of Threes forming column facing a flank and moving forward.*

Facing Left Advance In Column.(Baen Disha Column Men Age Barh).

The commander of the leading platoon will give 'No...Platoon, Left Turn'. Each Platoon commander when the leading guide of his platoon is in the rear and covered off from the guides of the preceding platoon will give 'No.. Platoon. Left Turn'.

5. *A column of Threes forming line of Platoon in Threes, moving in the same direction.*

On the Right Form Line of Platoon. In Threes atPaces Interval, Remainder Double March Dahine Ko—Kadam Kc Fasle per Platoon Ki Tino Tin Ki line Bana Baki Daur Ke Chal.

The leading platoon will continue to move forward in quick time. The remainder will be led by their guide by the shortest route to their position in the alignment at the named interval, where Platoon Commander will give the command 'No.....Platoon, Break into Quick Time, Quick March', at the same time taking post three paces in form of the leading threes of their respective platoons.

6. *A column of Threes forming a line of Platoon in Threes in the same direction at the halt.*

At the Halt On The Right Form Line Of Platoon In Threes At Column Paces Interval, Remainder Left Incline [Tham Kar ahine Ko Column Paces Interval, Remainder Column Quadam Ke Fasle Par Platoonon Ki Tino Tin Ki Line Bana, Baqi Adha Baen Mur.]

The leading platoon will be halted by its commander and the remainder on arriving at the remainder will receive from the required interval will receive from the platoon commander 'No ...Platoon Left Incline' and when in the alignment, No.....Platoon,Halt.

7. *A column of threes when on the move forming a line of platoon in threes to the Right flank.*

Move To The Right In Line Of Platoons In Threes, Platoons Right Wheel Platoonon Ki Tino Tin Ki Line Men Dahine Chal, Platoonon, Dahine Ghum).

All the platoons will wheel to the right simultaneously. Dressing should be taken from the left.

This formation can also be done from Column of Threes halted. The words of command will be the same except that the words 'Quick March' (Tez Chal) will be added at the end.

Section 10

103. Movements From Line of Platoon In Threes (In Column Distance).

1. *A line of platoon in threes (halted) forming column of threes in the same direction.*

Advance In Column Of Threes From The Left, Platoon On The Left To the Front Remainder Left Wheel, Company Quick March. (Baense Tino Tin Ki Kalam Men Age badhega, Baen Platoon Age Baki Baen Ghum, Kampani Tez Chal).

The Leading platoons will advance and others will wheel to the left and follow the leading platoon.

If it is required to do this formation while the Company is on the move the portion "Quick March" (Tez Chal) should be omitted from the words of command.

2. *A line of platoon in threes (halted) forming column of threes to a flank.*

Company Facing Left Advance In Column Of Threes, Platoons Left Wheel, Quick . March (Kampani, Baen Disha Tino Tin Ki Kalam Men AGe Badh, Platoonon Baen Ghoom, Tez Chal).

All the three platoons will step off and wheel to the left simultaneously.

This formation can be done while the company is on the move. To do this the words "Quick March" (Tez-Chal) should be omitted from the words of command.

3. *A line of platoon in threes halted forming line, at the halt, in the same direction.*

Company, At The Halt Form Line, On The Right Form Platoons. (Kampani, Thamkar Line Banaegi, Dahine Par Platoon Bana).

All the platoons will form on the right simultaneously. (In this formation if the right guides of all the platoons are leading the line will be formed in the retire direction and vice versa).

This formation can also be done to march the Company in line from the halt position. To do this the portion "At the Halt (Thamkar)" is to be omitted from the words of command. After the formation is completed "Forward" (Age Badh) should be ordered.

This formation can also be done, while the Company is marching in Line of Platoon in Threes, to bring the Company to halt or to continue marching. Necessary words of command as mentioned above may be given to do these.

4. *A line of platoon in threes forming column to a flank.*

Advance/Retire in Column Of Platoons, Company Left/Right Turn (Platoonon Ki Kalam Men Age Badhega/Pichhe Lautega Kampani Baen/ Dahine Mud).

This can be done when the Company is halted or on the move, (if the Line of Platoons in Threes is in Close Column distance then it will form Close Column).

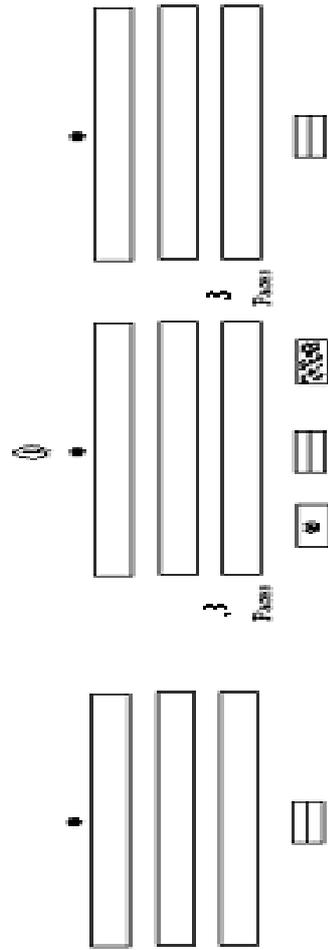
NOTE: The movements from and to "Column of Route" can be done as per Column of Threes. The only difference is that the words "Column of threes" may be substituted by the words "Column of Route" (Kuch Kalam) in the words of command. Also each time the column of Route formation is done the platoon commanders will move to the front of the platoons.

Section 11

104. Dismissing:

The officers will first be ordered to fall out, when they will move in quick time to the commander of the parade, form up in line in front, salute and form up behind him till the company is dismissed.

A COMPANY IN LINE



CHAPTER XVI

CEREMONIAL DRILL

1. The objects of ceremonial drill are to promote 'esprit-de-corps' and by attaining a high standard of steadiness and cohesion on the parade ground to assist in the development of the moral qualities which are essential for success in field operations.
2. These objects will be attained only by careful preparation and exact execution on all ceremonial occasions. To this end practice and rehearsals will be held at all levels, but units will be careful to avoid attempting to carry out any form of ceremonial for the adequate execution of which their training has not fitted them.
3. This chapter deals with the drill formations and procedure applicable to normal ceremonial occasions and provides details of the procedure upto a Battalion level. These could easily be adopted for lower formations upto a Company level.
4. Officers are expected to interpret these instructions reasonably and intelligently, bearing in mind that slight alterations can always be made to suit the personnel, ground and other exceptional circumstances.

Section I

105. General Arrangements.

1. In order to avoid confusion, all arrangements in connection with an Inspection or Review necessitate careful preparations under the following headings:
 - (i) Arrangements before the ceremony.
 - (ii) Arrangements for the ceremony,
 - (iii) Arrangements for dispersal,
 - (iv) Arrangements for spectators.
- (i) *Arrangements before the ceremony should normally include instruction on the following:*
- (a) The formations in which units are to form up on the Inspection Line, including any special directions regarding distances and intervals.
 - (b) The method by which units and formations are to adjust dressing on the Inspection Line, including details as to Markers.
 - (c) The massing of bands both for the inspection and for the march past.

- (d) When bands are to play.
- (e) General administrative arrangements, *i.e.*, the preparation of ground, arrangements for spectators, representatives of the press, traffic control, etc.
- (f) Dress to be worn by the persons taking part in the parade.

(ii) *Arrangements for the ceremony* should include the following:

- (a) An outline of the various phases of the ceremonies to be executed.
- (b) The method of signaling words of command and the exact procedure to be adopted on each signal.
- (c) Any special instructions regarding distances and interval.
- (d) Any special instructions regarding the bands and drums.
- (e) The action to be taken by the various units after the march past.
- (f) The methods of notifying a cancellation of the parade, *e.g.*, who takes the decision, who informs and who are informed, including the means of informing.

(iii) *Arrangements for dispersal*: Special attention must be paid to traffic control which must be well co-ordinated. Spectators should be asked to remain in their places till the units are clear of the parade ground. In addition, it is suggested that cordoning of the route by which the units march off or the parade remaining at ease after the march past till the crowd has dispersed, will assist in traffic control.

(iv) *Arrangements for Spectators*: It is essential that adequate arrangements are made for officials of all services and for the general public. There should be the minimum of seats reserved by name and they should be restricted to the highest officials and most prominent local notables. The remainder of the officials of the civil services and armed forces and people of similar status in non-official life, should be allotted tickets to general enclosures. They must not be segregated from each other. Proper arrangements must also be made for the general public.

2. The issue of invitations to those given either individual reserved seats or access to seats in the reserved enclosures must be done in good time and advice or assistance of local officials, civil and military, should be sought so that there are no omissions.

3. *Programs*: It is useful to issue a program of the parade with notes for spectators as to when they stand up, salute, take of their hats, and so on. There should also be loud speakers on all large parades commenting on the parade for the benefit of the spectators, particularly the general public.

4. *Other arrangements*:

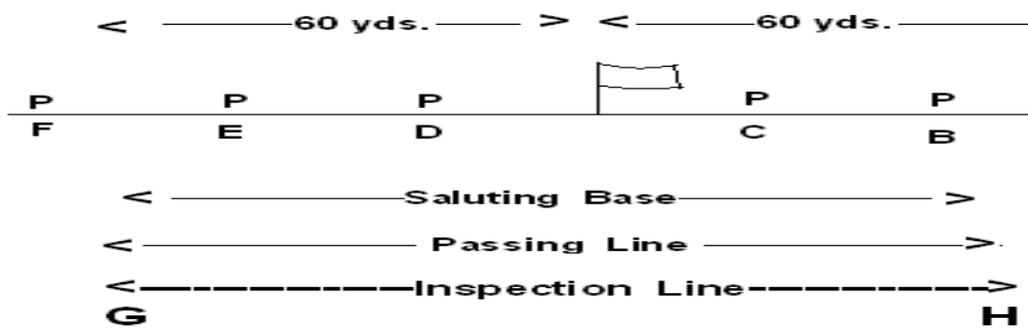
- (a) The dais on which the person for whom the parade is held is to

stand will have only a simple blue, brown or red durries. No carpets will be used.

- (b) The flagstaff will be behind the dais at a suitable distance, and as far as possible painted white.
- (c) Around the dais only people in uniform will be present. Broadcasters or radio recorders will have their tables at some distance behind the dais. Microphones when brought up to the person taking the salute will be brought by a person in uniform.
- (d) While the parade is on, persons in plain clothes will not be permitted to wander about in front of the spectators. The Press and photographers will be properly controlled by an officer.

Section 2

106. The Inspection Or Review Parade Ground.



LEGEND

- A** — Before units march past after the inspection they will move in Column of Route of Threes from the right and will be formed up at point A facing left in Close Column of Platoon or Companies, the front rank of the leading company being in alignment with Point A. When the order March Past is given, companies and platoons will step off at column interval by the right, the word of command being given in succession by Platoon Commanders or Company Commanders in such time as to step off their Platoon or Companies at the correct distance.
- B** — On reaching Point B, if in slow time, the command 'Open Order" (Khuli Line) will be given.
- C** — "Eyes Right". (Dahine Dekh)
- D** — "Eyes Front". (Samne Dekh)
- E** — "Close Order" (Nikat Line) (if applicable)
- F** — "Halt" (Tham) (if necessary)

NOTE: On the assumption that the parade is for a larger formation the distance between points E and F should be of sufficient length to enable all units taking part "in the parade to form up in close

column clear of the saluting base after the march past, or, if the parade is not required to return in close column, to enable the rear of each unit to clear the saluting base before its commander gives the necessary order for closing and moving off to a flank.

1. The length of the Inspection Line G—H depends on the frontage of the troops being inspected. Its distance from the Passing Line will depend on the greatest frontage occupied by any unit when marching past, plus the depth occupied by the band or massed bands while playing the march past. When larger bodies are being reviewed, this distance may require to be increased to ensure that, when units are drawn up in the line for inspection and commanders are in position at their correct distance in front of the Inspection Line, the commander of the parade is at a suitable distance from the Passing Line in proportion to the dimensions of the parade.

NOTE: It may also be necessary to reduce the distances of commanders in front of the Inspection Line. Otherwise, in the case of large formation, either the Inspection Line may be too far from the Passing Line or the commander of the parade too near the Inspecting Officer.

2. The length of the Saluting Base (B—E) will neither be less than 120 nor greater than 260 yards, the distance being dependent on local conditions. The March Past begins at point B and ends at point E. The Reviewing Officer will be behind the center of the Saluting Base. Ten yards on each side of him, along the Saluting Base, are two points, C and D, at which the salute will begin and finish respectively.

If a March Past is to take place without opening and closing order, *i.e.* in quick time only, Points B and E can be dispensed with. Points A and F should, however, remain at their original distances.

3. The portion of the Passing Line A—B should be of sufficient length to enable units to obtain their direction before reaching the Saluting Base. Units will move up to Point B in close formation; from that point, they will adopt the formation laid down for them in the orders for the review inspection.
4. As a rule the Passing Line will be the same in length as the Inspection Line.
5. All the points will be marked by flags or markers. Flags or posts may be set up to mark the line on which the troops are to form or the line may be picked out or marked with whitewash.

NOTE: When large bodies of men are to march past it will usually be desirable to place small colored flags among the passing line at appropriate distances from Point B to guide units moving at correct distances.

Section 3

107. Unit Organisation.

1. For ceremonial purposes units may be organized

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| (a) Mounted Squad. | In two ranks, if available. |
| (b) Dismounted Unit. | In three ranks. A battalion will have at least four companies On parade, each company sub-divided into three platoons. Each platoon as possible be of equal strength. Under Officers below the rank of Havalgars will normally parade in three ranks. Urplus Surplus Havalgar will normally parade in the ranks. |
2. The personal weapon to be carried by the rank and file will be standardized.
 3. Colors, etc., will be paraded.
 4. The band will be on parade and will form up 8 paces in rear of the center.
 5. Detachments, and individuals of other arms like the Home Prantiya Raksha Dal, etc., may also parade when available.

Section 4

108. Parade Formations.

1. The formation to be adopted by a Battalion or equivalent for review, in line for review, will be as per Appendix 'A'.
2. Appendix 'B' shows the formation of a Company or equivalent in Line of Platoons and Column of Sections when on a ceremonial parade with Battalion in line for review.
3. Appendix 'C' shows the formation to be adopted by an infantry battalion in Mass for review.
4. The colors will remain at the carry throughout the inspection, but the colour party forming the escort to the colours will conform with the rest of the parade, but do not stand easy.
5. Appendices 'A' to 'C' give in diagrammatic form the basis of any dismounted ceremonial parade, however large or small. They should be referred to throughout.

Section 5

109. Sizing A Dismounted Unit

1. The unit will first be sized in single rank—the tallest on the right—shortest on the left. Each man will take 24 inches in the ranks. The word of command will be "Tallest on the Right, Shortest on the left, in Single Rank Size". (Lamba Dahine, Chhota Baen, Ek Line Men Qad Var)
After being carefully sized, the following words of command will be given: -

- (A) "Number" (*Kar*) *Ginti*
- (B) "Odd Numbers One Pace Forward; Even Numbers One Pace Step Back—March". — (*Visham Ek Kadam Aage, Sam Ek Kadam, Pichhe Chal*).
- (C) "Stand Fast the Right-Hand Man, Odd Numbers to the Right, Even Numbers to the Left, Ranks Right and Left Turn"
(*Dahine Jawan Khara Rahega, Baqi Visham Dahine, Sam Baen, Linen Dahine Aur Baen Mur.*)
- (D) "Form Three Ranks—Quick March". (*Tin Line Bana, Tej Chal.*)

On the command "Quick March" both ranks will step off—the left-hand man of the even number rank will wheel to his right and lead on behind the off number rank; the odd number rank will begin to form three ranks as it arrives in position, i.e. No. 3 goes to the center rank behind No.1 No. 5 goes to the rear rank behind No. 3, No. 7 goes to the front rank, etc. (This can be simplified if the senior under officer on parade goes along the ranks detailing front, center and rear ranks; but he must begin with odd number ranks first.

The unit is now properly sized in three ranks with the tallest on the flanks.

Section 6

110. Telling Off A Dismounted Unit

When the unit has been sized, it will be numbered from right to left, and told off into platoons or their equivalent, which will then be numbered within the unit. When the number of files is not divisible by three the outer platoons will be stronger. A unit will be told off into platoons by calling out the numbers of the left-hand man, e.g. "Number 15" on which command No. 15 will prove by raising the left forearm parallel to the ground, elbow close to the side, fingers and thumb extended and together, palm facing inwards. Then follows the command "Number 15—Left of No. 1 Platoon"; No. 15 will then cut his forearm away to the side. "Number 29—Left of No. 2 Platoon"—and so on.

The Unit is now equalized.

Section 7

111. General Instructions For Inspections and Review.

Outline procedure

1. The Inspection or Review Ground will be marked as laid down in Section 2.
2. The unit to be inspected will be drawn up in line, or mass formation on the Inspection Line. See Appendices 'A' and 'C'.

3. Before the Inspection Officer arrives, the formation or unit will fix bayonets and ranks will be opened.
4. The Inspecting or Reviewing Officer will be received in accordance with the instructions laid down in Section 9.
5. The Inspecting or Reviewing Officer will carry out his inspection as laid down in Section 11 on the completion of which he will give orders for the march past.
6. Units and formations will then march past in accordance with the instructions laid down in subsequent sections.
7. For marching past the rate of marching will be 120 paces to the minute.
8. After completing the march past, units and formations will return to their original position on the Inspection Line and await orders. If ordered to advance in Review Order, the procedure will be as laid down in Section 18.

Section 8

112. Special Instructions For Officers

1. The Parade Commander—

- (a) If wearing a sword, he will not draw it unless a senior officer is on parade.
- (b) After he has marched past and saluted, he will move out and place himself on the right of the Inspecting Officer and will remain there until the parade has passed. During this period the second-in-command will assume command.

NOTE: If wearing a sword, the Parade Commander will remain at the carry while on the Saluting Base or in company with the Inspecting or Reviewing Officer.

2. *Staff officers and officers not taking part in parade*

Swords, if worn, will not be drawn by Staff officers, or officers holding personal appointments. All such officers will salute by hand.

3. *Officers taking part in parade*

Swords will be drawn by officers other than company commanders after their companies have been inspected. Company commanders will draw swords together, taking the time from the second-in-command or company commander of the leading company when there is no second-in-command on parade.

4. Swords, if drawn, will be at the carry throughout, except when the men are standing at ease and when marching to and from a parade ground (but clear of it) when they be at the slope.

5. Saluting when marching past

- (a) With swords drawn—the salute will begin on the command "*Eyes Right*" and finish on the order "*Eyes Front*". In the case of individual officers it will begin in sufficient time to enable the second motion of the sword to be completed on arrival at Point C and the carry to be resumed at Point D, the time being taken from the officer on the inner flank.
- (b) With swords not drawn—officers will salute with the hand. The salute will begin at Point C and finish at Point D, officers in front of leading sub-units taking their time from the commanding officer, remaining officers taking the time from their company commander.

6. Method of returning swords.

Unless specially ordered to do so earlier, officers will return swords when dismissing in accordance with para 7 below.

7. Dismissing at the conclusion of the parade

On the command "*Fall out the officers*" (*Officers Line Tor*) Officers will march up to the officer commanding the parade (those with drawn swords at the carry), halt five paces from him, salute, return swords, and form up in rear of the commander until the parade is dismissed.

NOTE: The interval between officers with drawn swords will be two arms length and those without one arm length (fully stretched).

Section 9

113. Receiving An Inspecting Or Reviewing Officer

1. General Instructions. The Unit or formation will be drawn up on the Inspection Line with its center opposite the point at which the Inspecting or Reviewing Officer will post himself.

- (a) Swords will be at the slope in mounted squads, at the carry in dismounted units.
- (b) In units armed with rifles, bayonets will be fixed and arms sloped.

2. Special Instructions. When the Inspecting or Reviewing Officer presents himself before the centre, he will be received with the appropriate salute to which he is entitled as per the following procedure:

(a) Units armed with rifles

"General Salute, Present Arms" (General Siloot, Salami Shastra). The men will present arms and all officers will salute. Supernumerary ranks and guides will present arms with the parade. Colours will remain at the carry.

(b) "Slope Arms". "Order Arms" (Kandhe Shastra, Bajju Shastra).

- (c) The band will play the first part of a slow march with drums beating, if there is no band on parade, the buglers will sound the general salute.
- (d) Colours if carried will only be dipped for persons entitled to the National Salute. For officers entitled to General Salute the colours will be "Let Fly".

Section 10

114. Receiving The, President And The Governors

1. The procedure will be as laid down in Section above except that—The caution 'National Salute' (Rashtriya Salute) will be substituted in place of 'general Salute'.
2. **It will be given to—**
 - (a) The President of the Republic of India.
 - (b) The Governors, within their own States.
3. Other dignitaries entitled to salute on ceremonial occasions will be given the 'General Salute'.
4. **The National Anthem will be played for the following :**
 - (a) President of the Republic of India.
 - (b) Governors, within their own States.
 - (c) Ceremonial functions / parades—whether any of the personages mentioned in 2(a) and 2(b) above is present or not on the 15th August and 26th January.
5. The National Anthem can also be played for the Prime Minister of India on special occasions with the prior approval of the State Government.
6. In the case of a foreign personage entitled to a National Salute, the band will play the appropriate National Anthem.

Section 11

115. The Inspection

1. Inspection of a Single Unit

- (a) After the appropriate salute to the Inspecting or Reviewing Officer is given, the Parade will be brought to the Order Arms. The Parade Commander will then report his Unit "Present and ready for inspection" to the Reviewing or Inspecting Officer. (Shriman ji Parade Nirikshhan Ko Hazir Hai).
- (b) When the Inspecting or Reviewing Officer starts inspecting No. 1 Company the SECOND-IN-COMMAND will give the command *No, ... Company Stand Fast (i.e. the right hand sub unit) "Remainder Stand at ease". (No....Kampani Khari Rahe, Baqi Vishram).*
- (c) The Reviewing or Inspecting Officer, accompanied by the Parade

Commander and such other officers, etc. as may be in attendance will then pass down the front rank of the sub unit from right to left, the center rank from left to right, and the rear rank from right to left.

- NOTE :** (i) He will pass along with supernumerary rank at his own discretion.
(ii) All persons accompanying the Reviewing or Inspecting Officer during the inspection will position themselves to his rear or on the side farthest from the rank being inspected at the time.

(d) Company Commanders will thereafter call their sub-units to 'Attention' as the Reviewing or Inspecting Officer moves towards the left of the rear rank of the Company on the right. On the approach of the Inspecting or Reviewing Officer he will salute and conduct him during the inspection of the Company. After the inspection he will salute and return to his original position.

(e) Once the Reviewing or Inspecting Officer has moved to begin the inspection of the next Company, the Company just inspected will be ordered by its commander to 'Stand At Ease.'

(f) The Reviewing or Inspecting Officer may review the front rank only if he so desires, in which event the whole unit will remain at attention while the Reviewing or Inspecting Officer passes from right to left of the front rank. The officer will notify the Commander of the parade beforehand the procedure he proposes to adopt.

(g) The band will play until the Reviewing or Inspecting Officer has completed the inspection.

(h) The Reviewing or Inspecting Officer will then give orders for the march past.

Section 12

116. March Past.

1. A battalion may march past in the following formations:

- (a) By Companies in Line See Appendix 'D'.
- (b) In Column of Route See Appendix 'E'.
- (c) By Platoons See Appendix 'F'.

2. The inspection or review ground will be marked out as laid down in Section 2.

3. The Band will be formed up in Mass opposite the Inspecting Officer allowing sufficient room for the Battalion to march past in the above three formations. The band will move under the command of the Band Master or Drum Major. On the

Conclusion of the March Past of the Battalion the band will also march past in the rear.

4. When a Battalion is required to advance in Review Order, the procedure will be as laid down in Section 18.

Section 13

117. Post Of Officers.

1. Parade Commander.

- (a) By Companies in Line 20 paces in front of the center of No. 2 Platoon.
- (b) *In Column of Route.* 20 paces in front of the leading Threes.
- (c) By Platoons 20 paces in front of the Right half of the Leading Platoons.

2. The Battalion SECOND-IN-COMMAND

- (a) By Companies in Line 20 paces in front of the center of No. 3 platoon of the leading company, in line with the Battalion Commander.
- (b) *In Column of Route.* 10 paces in rear of the right-hand man of the rear Threes of the rear company.
- (c) *By Platoons.* 20 paces in front of the left half of the leading platoon.

3. The Adjutant.

- (a) *By Companies in Line.* 10 paces in rear of the center of the rear company.
- (b) *In Column of Route.* On the left and five paces in rear of the Parade Commander.
- (c) *By Platoons.* 10 paces in rear of the center of the rear platoon of the Battalion.

4. *The Company Commander.* In all the formations, will be six paces in front of the center of his company's frontage.

5. *The Platoon Commanders.* In all formations, will be three paces in front of the center of their respective platoons. In Column of Route all the three platoon commanders may also march 3 paces ahead of the leading platoons of their company.

6. The Subedar Major.

- (a) *By Companies in Line.* Immediately in the rear of the Color Party.
- (b) *In Column of Route.* 10 paces in front of the leading Company covering off the Parade Commander.

(c) *By Platoons.* On the right of the Adjutant and covering off the right-hand man of the rear platoon.

Section 14

118. A Battalion Marching Past By Companies

Moving into position

1. *"Close Order—March" (Nikat Line Chal).*
2. *"Slope Arms". (Kandhe Shastra).*
3. *"Move to the right in column of threes, Battalion right-turn, by the left. Quick March", (Tinon tin column men dahine chal, Battalion dahine mur, baen se tej chal).*

The leading Company will wheel to its left when opposite the forming — up position on the passing line, remaining companies will conform.

4. *"At the halt, facing left, form close column of companies" (Battalion Commander) (Tham kar baen disha, companion ke Nikat column bana).*
5. *"No.....Company, Halt, Company will advance, left turn". (No.....Kampani, Tham, Kampani age barhega, baen mur).*

The Commands will be given to the leading company on arrival at its position in the forming up place on the Passing Line.

The remaining companies will be led by their guides to the position where their right guides will be when the battalion is formed up in Close Column of Companies. On arrival in position each company commander will give "No...Company. Halt, Company will advance, left turn".

6. When the last company has fronted up, the Battalion Commander will give *"Battalion, right dress"*. On this command Company Havaldar Majors will turn to their right together, step off, march out five paces, halt and turn about and take up their dressing, acting together throughout. They will then dress their companies, finally giving "Eyes Front", starting from the front. On completion Company Havaldar Majors will step off together, halt and turn to their right.

Marching Past

7. *"Battalion will march past by companies" (Battalion, Kampanion men manch se Guzregi) (Battalion Commander).* The leading company commander will order *"No...Company, By the Right, Quick March", (No....Kampani, Dan / tine se, Tez Chal) the remaining companies following in succession at full column distance.*
8. *The Company Commander will order "Eyes—Right" and "Eyes Front" at points C and D. Platoon Commanders will take the time from the Comapny Commander.*

The Battalion Commander, SECOND-IN-COMMAND, Adjutant, and

Subedar Major will salute individually.

9. Resuming position on the inspection line.

If the battalion is required to resume its original position on the Inspection Line, it may be brought in Column of Threes by giving the command "In Succession Advance in Column of Threes from the Right", (Dahine se Bari Bari Tino Tin ki Kalam Men Age Badh) After giving two wheels at points F and G the companies may form up in their original position, halt and turn to the left and open order march.

Section 15

119. Marching Past in Column Of Route

Moving into position

1. "Close Order—March". (Nikat Line Chal).
2. "Slope Arms". (Kandhe Shastra).
3. Move to the Right in Column of Route, Battalion Right Turn" (Kuch Column Men Dahine Chal, Battalion Dahine Mur). Officers will take up position as given in Appendix E.

Marching Past

4. "Battalion Will March Past In Column of Route" (Battalion Kuch Kalam Men Manch se Guzregi). (Battalion Commander). The leading company commander will order "No.. Company, By the Left, Quick March" (No.....Kampani, Baen-se Tez Chal) the remaining companies following in succession when approximately 10 pace distance has been achieved.
5. The Companies will wheel at points 'H' and 'A' and thereafter the dressing will be by the right.
6. The Company Commander will salute independently at points 'C' and 'D'.
7. Each Platoon Commander will give the command independently to his own platoon on reaching points 'C' and 'D' respectively.
8. If swords are not worn, all officers will salute with the hand, taking the time from the Company Commander.

9. Resuming position on the inspection line.

If the Battalion is required to resume its original position on the Inspection Line, it will give two wheels at point 'F' and 'G' and thereafter the battalion may form up in its original position, halt and turn to the left and open order march.

Section 16

120. Marching Past By Platoon In Quick Time

Moving into position

1. "Close Order—March". (*Nikat Line Chal*).
2. "Slope Arms". (*Kandhe Shastra*).
3. "Platoons at the Halt, Right—Form." (*Platoon Tham kar Dahine Ban*).
4. "Quick March", "Platoons Left Dress", "Platoons Eyes Front". (*Tej Chal Platoon Baen Saj, Platoon Samme Dekh*).
5. "Battalion will march past in quick time—by the left Quick March". (*Battalion Tej Chal Se Manch Se Guzregi-Baen Se Tej Chal*).

6. "Change Direction—Left". (*Baen Disha Badal*).

The battalion commander will give this word of command on reaching point 'H'. Platoon Commander will wheel their platoons. No. word of command will be given by the company commanders. The battalion will change direction on the Passing Line opposite point B.

7. *Marching Past.*

The officers will commence and end salute when they arrive at points 'C' and 'D'. Platoon Commanders will give "Eyes Right" and "Eyes Front" at points 'C' and 'D'.

8. *Resuming position on the inspection line.*

The battalion will change direction opposite point 'E' and again -at point 'G' platoons wheeling. Company commanders will order their companies to mark time when the left of the leading platoon of their company reaches the point where it rested in line.

"Platoons at the halt, left—form" (Platoon Tham "Kar Baen Bana).

"Forward"
(*Age Barh*)

"Centre Dress"
(*Madhye Saj*)

"Eyes Front".
(*Samne Dekh*)

Section 17

121. Marching Past By Platoons In Slow Time.

If it is desired to do a March Past by platoons in Slow Time before marching past in Quick Time, the following procedure will be carried out.

Moving into position. Same as for Sec. 16(1) to (6) except that the first wheel will be given at a point little further away from point 'H' i.e., from a point when the last platoon of the battalion has crossed point 'H'. The second wheel will be given when the leading platoon reaches a point in line with the Saluting Base. When the whole battalion has wheeled, the halts will be given at point 'A'.

Marching Past

1. *"Platoons Right Dress". (Platoonon Dahine Saj).*
2. *"Platoons Eyes Front" (Platoon Samne Dekh).*
3. *"The battalion will march past in slow time, by the Right Slow March" (Battalion Dhire Chal Men Manch Se Guzregi, Dahine Se Dhire Chal). By the Battalion Commander.*
4. *"Battalion in succession Open Order March (Battalion Bari Bari Khuli Line Chal) to be given by the Battalion Commander when No. 1 Platoon of the Battalion is nearing point 'B'. Each platoon will thereafter Open Order at point 'B' and continue marching.*
5. The officers will commence and end salute when they arrive at points 'C' and 'D', Platoon Commanders will give "Eyes Right" and "Eyes Front" at points 'C' and 'D'.
6. The Command *'In Succession Close Order March' (Bari Bari Nikat Line Chal)* will be given by the Battalion commander when all the platoons have cleared the Saluting Base and are between points 'D' and 'E'. All the platoons will Close Order March at the spot from where No .1 platoon will close order and continue marching.
7. Soon after the Close Order has been achieved command *'Break into Quick Time, Quick March (Tej chaal Men Aa, Tej chal)* will be given by the Battalion Commander followed by *"In succession Advance in Column of Threes from the Right. (Bari Bari TinonTin column Men Dahine se Age Barh).*
8. Three Left Wheels will be given at points 'F 'G' and 'H'. When the column is about to reach point 'A' the command *'Facing Left Advance in Column of Platoons (Baen Disha Platoon ke Column Men Age Barh)* will be given by the Battalion Commander. Thereafter the Platoon will continue the March Past as for Quick Time and resume position on the Inspection Line.

NOTE: The following action will be taken by the platoons on the command 'Open and Close Order March' when marching in slow time.

During a slow march in three ranks, on the command 'Open Order' the rear rank will mark time four paces, the center rank will mark time two paces, and then lead on, the front rank will continue to lead on. On the command 'Close Order' the front rank will mark time four paces leading on a full pace on the fifth, the center rank will mark time two paces leading on a full pace on the third.

Section 18

122. Advancing In Review Order.

1. If a Unit is to advance in, Review Order at the conclusion of the parade, it will normally form up on the Inspection Line in the same formation in which it received the Reviewing Officer, the band being in rear of the center.

3. The detailed procedure will be as follows:
"Open Order March". (Khule Line Chal).
"On the Center Dress, Eyes, Front". (Madhya Saj, Samne Dekh).
"Advance in Review Order, By the Center, Quick March"
(Samiksha Aram Se, Madhya Se, Tej Chal).

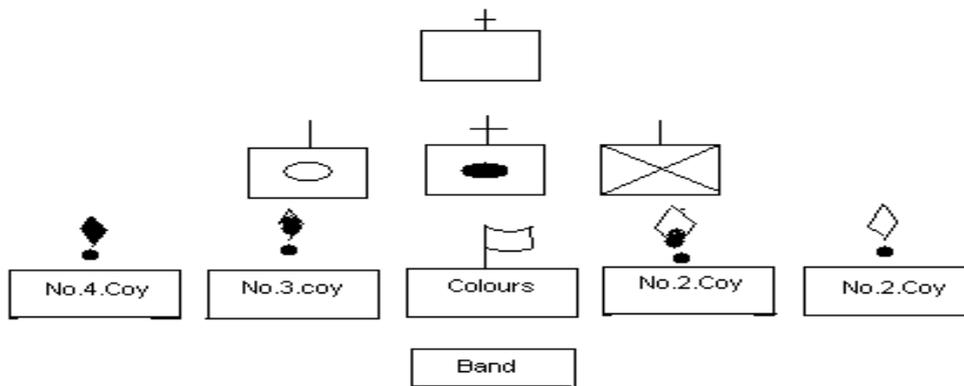
3. The Unit will advance by the center for 15 paces, the band and drums playing without rolls. At the conclusion of 7 1/2 bar of the music, the band and drums will cease playing, when the whole parade will automatically halt. The parade will then be ordered to salute in the same manner as when receiving the Reviewing or Inspecting Officer after which it will be directed to Order Arms and will wait for orders.

APEENDIX 'A'

Position of officers and men in line formation for review

- (a) Parade Commander 20 paces in front of the center of the Battalion.
- (b) SECOND-IN-COMMAND 10 paces in front of the center of the Colors.
- (c) Adjutant 10 paces in front of the left guide of No. 2 Company.
- (d) Company Commanders 6 paces in front of the center of their Companies.
- (e) Platoon Commanders 3 paces in front of the center of the Platoons.
- (f) Subedar-Major 10 paces in front of the Right guide of No. 3 Company.
- (g) C.H.M. parades as right guide to his Company's right hand platoon.
- (h) C.H.M.Q. parades as left guide to his Company's left hand platoon.
- (i) Havaldars and all other N.C.O.S in the ranks with their platoons. Platoon Havaldar will parade as the right hand man of his platoon.
- (j) Distance gr 3 n paces between platoons, 5 paces between Companies.

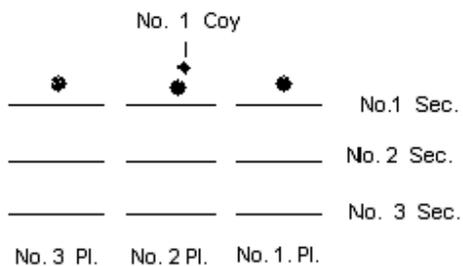
- (k) Three paces between the Color Party and the Companies on either side.
- (l) Companies to be sized and equalized as far as possible. Battalion Headquarters being included in the four Companies on parade.
- (m) Band will form up 8 paces in rear of the center.



| Sign | KEY |
|------|-------------------|
| | Parade Commander |
| | 2nd in Commander |
| | Adjutant |
| | Subedar Major |
| | Coy. Commander |
| | Pl. Commander |
| | Coy. Hay. Major |
| | C. Q. M. Havaldar |

APPENDIX 'B'

“A Company in line of Platoons and Column of Sections on a Ceremonial Parade with Battalion in line for Review”

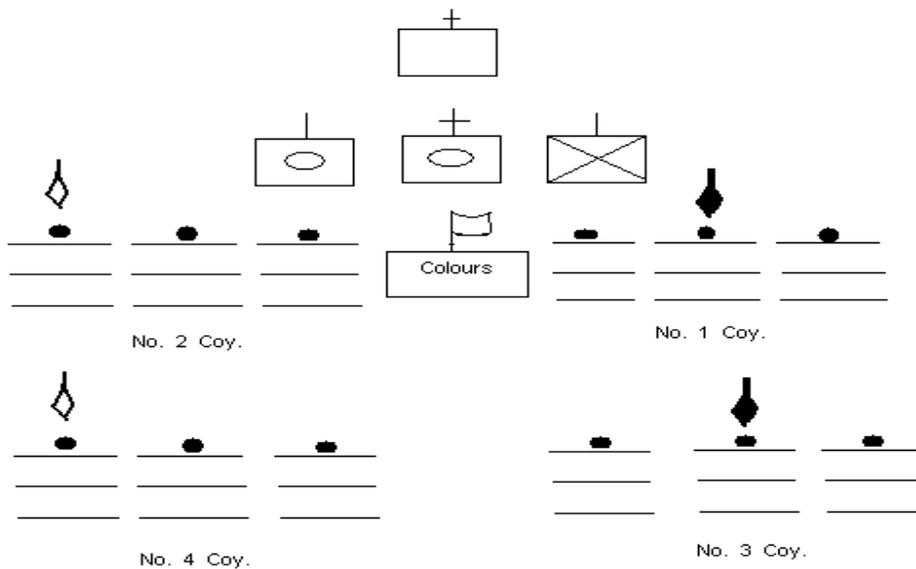


| Sign | Key |
|------|----------------|
| | Coy. Commander |
| | Pl. Commander |

(Note Position and distance will be the same as given in appendix " A ")

Appendix “C”

A BATTALION FORMED IN PASS FOR REVIEW

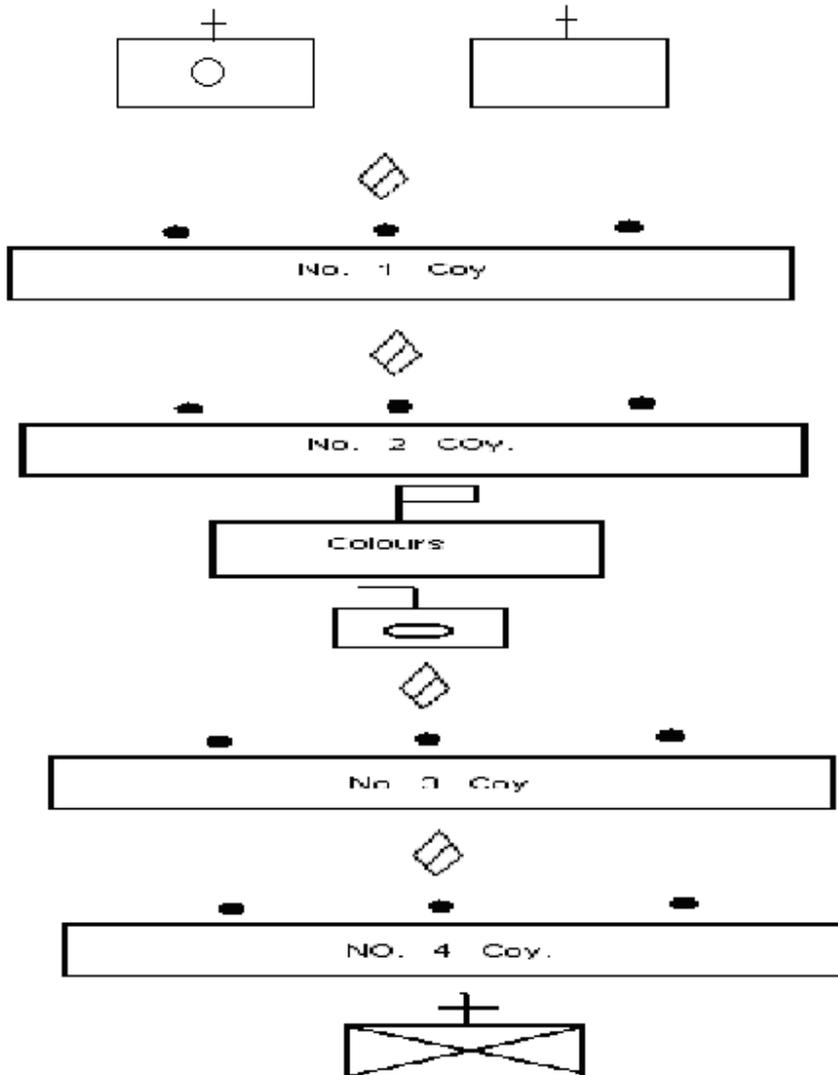


BAND

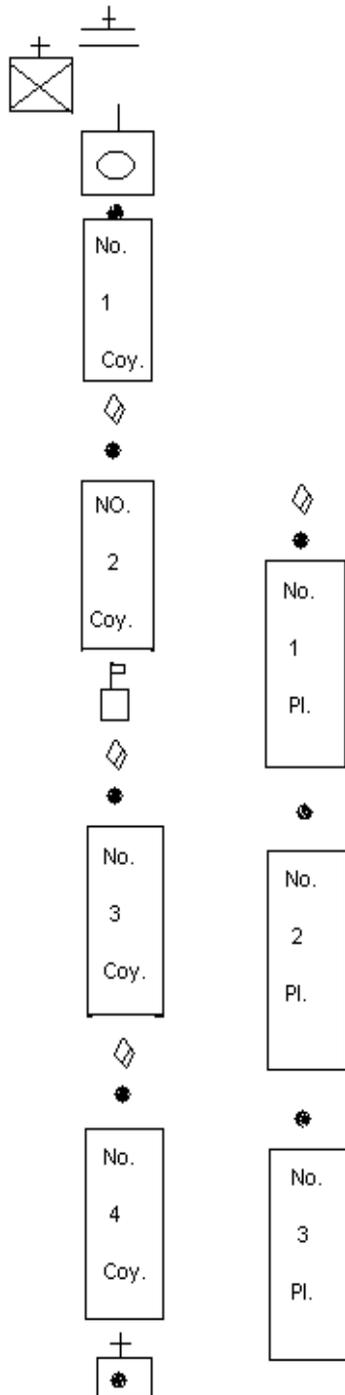
Note:(i) Position and distance of officers will be the same as given in appendix 'A'
(ii) Distance between Sub-Units approximately 12 paces.

APPENDIX 'D'

Position of Officers and Colors in Marching Past by Companies



Note: For distances to be maintained by officers from platoons and companies refer to section 13

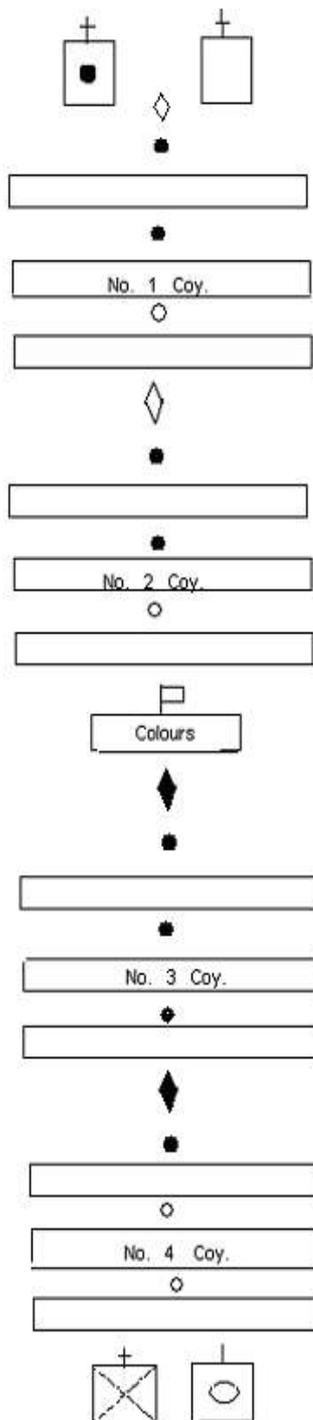


Position of officers and Colors in Column of Route

- (a) *Parade Commander* 20 paces in front of the leading Threes.
- (b) *Second-in-Command* 10 paces in rear of the right hand man of the rear threes of the rear company.
- (c) *Adjutant* be on the left and five paces in rear of the parade commander.
- (d) *Company Commander* in all formations will be six paces in front of the center of his company's frontage.
- (e) *Platoon Commander* in all formations will be three paces in front of the center of their platoons. All the three platoon commanders may also march 3 paces ahead of their Company. (This will be done when all the platoons of the company join together without keeping any gap in between the platoons and in which case the company commander will bring the company to "Eyes Right" and "Eyes Front" near the Saluting Base. However, this will normally not be done except on route marches),
- (f) *Subedar Major* 10 paces in front of the leading Company, covering off the parade commander.
- (g) *Colors* in rear of No. 2 Company.
- (h) *Distance* between Companies will be approximately 10 paces.

Position of Coy. Officers in Column of Route

APPENDIX 'F'



Position of Officers and Men in Marching Past by Platoons

- (a) *Parade Commander* 20 paces in front of the right half of the leading platoon.
- (b) *Second-in-Command* 20 paces in front of the left half of the leading platoon.
- (c) *Adjutant* 10 paces in rear of the center of the rear platoon of the battalion.
- (d) *Company Commander* 6 paces in front of the leading platoon of their respective Company.
- (e) *Platoon Commander* 3 paces in front of the center of their platoons.
- (f) *Subedar Major* on the right of the Adjutant and covering off the right hand man of the rear platoon.
- (g) *Color and Color Party* in rear of the rear platoon of No 2 Company.

APPENDIX G

Guidelines for preparing Ceremonial Uniform

Ceremonial uniform is worn for participation in various ceremonial parades and on ceremonial occasions. The following guidelines should be kept in mind while preparing the ceremonial uniform.

(a) Cap / Turban

- (i) Peak Cap / Barrette Cap/Ceremonial Turban should not be loose. In case it is loose, sufficient packing should be given so that it fits correctly on the head.
- (ii) There should be no stains. It should have a fresh look.
- (iii) All leather and metal parts should be properly polished.
- (iv) The badge should be fitted properly in the center of the cap/ turban.

(b) Shirt

- (i) The Shirt to be worn on parade should be proper 166 cleaned and of proper khaki shade.
- (ii) The folding of the shirt sleeves should be approximately equal to 4 fingers held together.
- (iii) The length of the sleeves should be adjusted in such a way that when one folds his arms there is no folding on the folded sleeves.
- (iv) All buttons in the shirt should be new and should not that the upper edge of the sign is 4 fingers below the shoulder stitching.
- (v) The formation sign should be fixed in such a manner that the upper edge of the sign is 4 fingers below the shoulder stitching.
- (vi) The shoulder insignia should be between the shoulder stitching and the upper edge of the formation sign and the outer edges should be in the same line as the formation sign.
- (vii) The name plate should be over the upper portion of the pocket stitching and in the center of the right hand pocket of the shirt.
- (viii) The outer edge of the shirt stitching, the right hand edge of the Belt Buckle and inner edge of the fly flap of the trousers should be in one straight line.
- (ix) All metals worn on the shirt should be properly polished. It should be ensured that stains of polish should not come on the shirt.

(c) Cross Bell / Belt

- (i) The leather should be properly polished and the metal parts also properly polished.
- (ii) The belt should be adequately tight, it should neither be very loose nor very tight.
- (iii) The length of the belt should be kept correctly measured so that no extra portion of the belt projects.

(d) Trousers

- (i) The length of the trousers should be such that when standing at attention the laces of the boots should not be visible.
- (ii) After wearing the pant please do not sit down before going for the parade as this will result in unnecessary creases on the pant.
- (iii) The bottom of the pants should measure 16 to 18 inches.

(e) Shoes

The shoes should be properly polished and the blackish tinge of polish should be removed.

- (ii) Laces should be new and not twisted.
- (iii) Laces should be properly tied and the eyelet holes should be together and not kept loose.
- (iv) Khaki socks should be worn and this should be sufficient height so that it is visible even if the pant comes above the boot level.

(f) General

- (i) Everybody should have a proper hair cut. They should be properly shaved and their mustache trimmed.
- (ii) No photo chromatic glasses or dark glasses will be allowed on parade.
- (iii) No wrist watch should be worn on parade and unnecessary items of jewellery avoided.
- (iv) Lanyard should not be faded and as far as possible should be new.

VII GUARDS AND SENTRIES

General

1. The object of this chapter is to lay a simple routine that will ensure the effective Mounting and relief of guards and Sentries. The details give the normal system followed by the Police Force for ceremonial purposes, and may be followed where applicable.
2. There are two forms of guards, the purpose and function of which are quite different. These are Ceremonial Guards and Tactical Guards.
3. The objects of these two forms of guards are described in the succeeding paragraphs. Having regard to the functions to be performed, the form of Guard which is to be mounted will be at the discretion of the officer in charge of the District or Unit.

Ceremonial Guard

4. **Ceremonial Guard will be mounted for one of the following purposes.**
 - (i) To exercise men in ceremonial drill and to instill in them the highest standard of smartness, cleanliness, discipline, and arms drill, and to encourage "pride of the force".
 - (ii) To pay compliments to high ranking officers, or other distinguished persons, between Reveille and Retreat.
5. A ceremonial guard will be mounted only between Reveille and Retreat. On conclusion of its ceremonial function, or at Retreat, ceremonial guard may take over duties immediately as Tactical Guard and *vice versa*.
6. A ceremonial guard is to be considered at all times the symbol of the pride of the District and Unit. Its drill, smartness, and turn out will be of the highest standard.

Tactical Guard

7. The object of a Tactical Guard is to fulfill any form of protective task as decided by the officer in charge of the District. such tasks will include the guarding of Government buildings, Armoury, Magazine, Treasure, the security of prisoners and the prevention of unauthorized persons entering prohibited areas.
8. Tactical Guards will pay compliments like ceremonial guards between Reveille and treat, but during the night hours will merely Stand To, unless ordered to fall in for inspection by a Round.
9. A tactical guard will be suitably disposed tactically to carry out its

task. In arranging dispositions full opportunity will be taken to train tactically junior havaldars, and to develop their initiative. Stand To positions, together with alternative positions will be detailed for each member of a Tactical Guard.

10. It will be realized that Tactical Guard is functioning most efficiently when it can neither be seen nor heard. In Guard Rooms sentries will be secure but they must be protected against a rush assault and grenades. For this reason, it is not intended that the taking up of tactical dispositions should develop into a form of drill to be performed every time; nor is it intended that the taking up of tactical dispositions should become the equivalent of the turn out of a Ceremonial Guard to a Visiting Officer.

11. When in a Stand To position, no member of a Tactical Guard will pay compliments. Provided that sentries remain tactically disposed, a Tactical Guard less its sentries may fall in for inspection by a Round. The appropriate compliment may then be paid.

Section 1

123. Definitions

1. A Guard is a body of men to protect places or persons.
2. *Duties* are Guards and Picquets besides the Quarter Guard personnel who fall in for inspection of the Orderly Officer before they are marched off to their various assignments.
3. Sentries are Constables belonging to a Guard and posted on duty in various places.
4. A Sentry's beat is the length of ground which he has to patrol.
5. A Sentry's post is the place where he is mounted.
6. A Relief consists of the sentries to be posted on the various sentry posts at the same time, or to relieve the Sentries already on duty.
7. 'Grand Round' includes the Superintendent of Police when on inspection duty and any gazetted officer detailed by him for a similar purpose.
8. 'Visiting Round' includes all non-gazetted officers carrying out similar duties.
9. Alarm posts are posts made round the Guard for its protection during night. These posts are occupied by the Guard and sentry when a Stand To is ordered during night.
10. 'Alternative Posts' are similar to Alarm Posts. These are occupied by the Guard and sentry when it is ordered to Stand To for the second time during the night.
11. *'Turning Out'*—When Guards turn out they move at the double and fall in with sloped arms. The Bugler falls in two paces on the right of the

Guard commander and the Sentry, one pace to the right of the Buglar. This is generally ordered between Reveille and Retreat.

12. 'Stand To' is the order given during night (between Retreat and Reveille) to a Guard when they take position in their Alarm Posts.

13. 'Stand Down' is the order given to a Guard to close from their Alarm Posts after the inspection of the Rounds during the night.

14. Bugle Calls.

(a) Reveille is the bugle call sounded in the early morning when the flag is hoisted at the Quarter Guard.

(b) Retreat is the bugle call sounded at sun-set when the flag is lowered at the Quarter Guard.

(c) Tattoo First Post These are sounded at 9.30 p.m. and 10 p.m. Tattoo Last Post

The First Post is sounded to warn the men that it is time to close the day's activities and get back to the barracks. After the Last Post is sounded the duty havaldar checks the barracks to ensure that all are in bed and no one is absent.

Section 2

124. Guard Mounting.

| <u>Details</u> | <u>Remarks</u> |
|--|---|
| 1. Time for Guard Mounting..... | To be fixed by the Officer in-charge of the District or Unit. |
| 2. Dress for Guard..... | Do |
| 3. Stick Orderly: For Ceremonial Guards an extra man will be deputed to allow the cleanest man being excused guard duty. The man so excused will be named 'Stick Orderly'. His duty shall be to wait on the Commandant or the senior officer in the Station, in his office to perform the duties of a 'Runner'. He will wear his Guard Mounting Uniform. | |

Details

Remarks

4. Parading. On the bugle call 'Parade for Guard' (sounded half an hour before the guard mounting time) the men selected for guard will get ready for mounting.

Time may be altered at the discretion of the Officer In-charge of the District or Unit.

On the 'Quarter Call' for guard mounting (sounded quarter of an hour before the guard mounting time) the duty N.C.O. will parade the guards and inspect them in the Lines. He will then march the guard to the parade ground five minutes before the 'Tall in Call' is sounded and will hand them over to the Orderly Officer in the following manner: —

The place for guard mounting need not necessarily be always the parade ground. This may be changed at the discretion of the Officer In-charge.

Bugler will be two paces to the right of the Guard Commander and duty N.C.O. five paces.

(a) *Guard Get On Parade (Garud Parade Par)*

The Guard will come to attention, step off and fall in two ranks, at the open order, two paces in front of the Duty N.C.O. and stand at ease. The Duty N.C.O. will then take his position at a convenient distance from the guard, say twelve paces and face the guard.

(b) *Guard—Attention (Garad Savdhan).*

(The guard Commander and the 2nd in Command will not fix bayonets.)

(c) *Guard Will Fix Bayonets Fix-Bayonets Attention (Garad Sangeen lagayega—Sangeen Laga, Savdhan)*

(d) *Guard—Right Dress—Eyes Front (Garad—Dahine Saj—Samne Dekh)*

(The Duty N.C.O. will himself dress the guard and thereafter inspect the guard straightaway).

Details

Remarks

(e) *Guard Will Unfix Bayonets—Unfix Bayonets—Attention, (Garad Sangeen Uttarega—Sangeen Utar—Savdhan).*

(f) *For Inspection—Port Arms. (Nirikshan Ke Liye Baen Shastra).*

(The Duty N.C.O. will inspect arms and will align himself five paces at the right incline to the Guard Commander, before the next command is given.)

(g) *Guard—Examine Arms (Garad—Janch Shastra)*

(After examining the bands of weapons the Duty N.C.O. will return to his original position.)

(h) *Ease—Springs (Bolt—Chala)*

Carried out as a drill movement.

(i) *Order Arms (Bazu Shastra)*

(j) *Stand At Ease (Ilshrani)*

After this the duty N.C.O. takes his position on the right of the Bugler at a distance of 5 paces from him and awaits the arrival of the Duty Officer.

On the arrival of the Orderly Officer, the Duty N.C.O. brings the guard to Attention and Slope Arms and shall march towards the Orderly Officer and halt at a distance of two paces in front of him, salute and report "The guard is Ready for Inspection Sir (Shriman Guard Nirikshan Ke Lie Tayar Hai)". After this the Orderly officer will order "Duty N.C.O. Take Post (Duty NCO Jagah Lo)". On this the Duty NCO will salute, turn about and march back to his original position at the right of the bugler.

Details

Remarks

On the 'Fall in Call' being sounded the Orderly Officer will call 'Marker'. The Guard Commander will advance two paces in front of the Orderly Officer, halt, Order Arms and Stand at Ease.

On the orderly officer's Command Duties on Parade, (*'Duties Parade par'*) the guard will march on to the Marker, Order Arms and Stand at Ease.

Guards will always form up in open order.

Orderly Officer will move to a convenient distance from the guard (say 20 to 30 paces) and face the guard.

If the guard is commanded by an officer he will be two paces in front of the center, and the senior N.C.O. on the right of the Guard; if Guard is commanded by an N.C.O., he will be on the right of the guard, the next senior N.C.O. (if any) being in the rear rank covering the senior N.C.O.

An Officer commanding a guard shall not be called upon to act as a Marker. The senior N.C.O. commanding the first guard, if more than one guard, shall be the Marker.

5. Procedure:

Commands by the Orderly Officer:

- (a) Guard Attention (Guard Savdhan)
- (b) Guard will Fix- Bayonets—Guard Fix-Bayonets, Attention (Guard Sangeen lagayega, —Sangeen Laga, Savdhan)
- (c) Guard Right Dress. (Garad Dehine Saj)

The Gurad Commander and the Second-Command will not fix bayonets. The duty N.C.O. will dress the guard by turning to his left. On completion he will give 'Eyes Front' and turn to his front.

Details

Remarks

- (d) *Guard Number. (garad—ginti kar)* Here the Orderly Officer will inspect the guard. The duty N.C.O. will join him in time to meet him in front of the guard. He will salute the Orderly Officer and accompany him during the inspection and note down remarks, if any, pointed out by the Orderly Officer. After inspection both will return to their original positions.
- (e) *Guard will Unfix Bayonets — Unfix-Bayonets—Attention (Garad Sangeen Uttarega, Sangeen Uttar, Savdhan)* Only the front rank excluding the guard commander and the bugler will call out the number.
- (f) *For Inspection Port Arms (Nirikshan Ke Liye Baen Shastra)* The duty N.C.O. will not salute the Orderly Officer here.

The Orderly Officer and the duty N.C.O. act as in (a) above, except that after the inspection of arms both will align themselves 5 paces at the right incline to the Guard Commander.

(g) *Examine Arms. (Janch Shastra)*

After the examination of arms both will return to their original position, the duty N.C.O. 5 paces to the right of the guard and the Orderly Officer 20 to 30 paces to the front of the Guard.

| <u>Details</u> | <u>Remarks</u> |
|--|--|
| (h) <i>Ease Spring (Bolt Chala)</i> | Carried out as a <i>Drill</i> Movement |
| (i) <i>Order Arms. (Bazu Shastra)</i> | |
| (j) <i>Guard will Fix Bayonets—Guard Fix-Bayonets.Attention. (Garqd Sangeen Lagayega—Sangeen Laga—Savdhan).</i> | |
| At this stage the Stick Orderly will be selected and dismissed. | The Guard Commander and the Second-in-Command will not fix. |
| (k) <i>No... Front (or Rear). Rank—Stick Orderly., Stick Orderly—Dismiss. (No....Samne Ya Pichhli Line Stick Orderly—Vis-arjun)</i> | The Stick Orderly will take a pace forward or backward according to his position in the front or rear rank, salute and then dismiss. |
| (l) <i>Close Order March (Nikat Line Chal)</i> | |
| (m) <i>Right Dress (Dahine Saj)</i> | The Duty N.C.O. will turn to the left and dress the guard after which he will order the guard to "Eyes Front". |
| (n) <i>Slope Arms. (Kandhe Shastra)</i> | |

Details

Remarks

(o) *Guard Commander Take over. (Garad Commander Jagha Lo).* Here the Guard Commander will take a pace forward and salute; the guard commander will place himself 2 paces in the rear and center of the guard. The second in command will at the same time take 2 paces forward and occupy the place of the Guard Commander. The Orderly Officer also will move out to a convenient distance to his left flank from where he can acknowledge the compliments of the guard given on its march.

Commands by the Guard Commander.

(p) *Guard by the Right—Quick March (Garad Dahine Se Tej Chal).*

(q) *Eyes Right, Eyes Front. (Dahine Dekh, Samme Dekh).*

The Guard Commander marches off the guard to the place where he is to relieve the old Guard.

If it is not possible to march the guard all the way in two ranks or single ranks to the Guard Room, suitable formation may be adopted

The Orderly Officer will fall out. The duty N.C.O. and both will supervise the changing of the Guards.

Section 3

125. Relieving , Posting , And Dismissing A Guard.

1. When the ground admits, the new Guard will advance in line towards the OLD Guard and be halted where possible, 15 paces in front of it. When this is not possible, the new Guard will Halt Six Paces

From the left of the Old Guard facing the same direction and dress up.

2. On the approach of the new Guard, the Old Guard Commander will fall in his guard at the slope and dress up.

The following ceremonials will then be observed:

O.G.C.—Old Guard Present Arms (Officers salute).

[*Purani Garad Salami Shastra (officers' siloot).*]

N.G.C.—New Guard Present Arms. (Nai Garad' Salami Shastra).

O.G.C.—Old Guard Slope Arms. (Purani Garad Kandhe Shastra).

N.G.C.—New Guard Slope Arms. (Nai Garad Kandhe Shastra).

O.G.C.—Old Guard Order Arms. (Purani Garad Bazu Shastra).

N.G.C.—New Guard Order Arms. (Nai Garad Bazu Shastra).

O.G.C.—Old Guard Stand at Ease (Purani Garad Vuharn).

N.G.C.—New Guard Stand at Ease (Nai Garad Vishram).

3. Taking the time from the Old Guard Commander, both Guard Commanders come to Attention, Slope Arms, take five paces forward, halt and incline inwards. The Old Guard Commander then asks for the relief of his sentries as follows:

One Senti by Jay and one (two) by Night. (Ek sentry Din Aur Ek (ya Do) Sentry Rat). The New Guard Commander repeats the same.

4. Both Guard commanders then move off to their respective guards, the Old guard commander falling in on the right of his guard and the new Guard Commander placing himself in front of his guard.

5. The New Guard is then numbered by its commander and reliefs distributed as follows:

New Guard Attention

(Nai Garad Savdhan)

As a Guard Number

(Garad Ki Tarah Ginti kar)

(Right hand man will be No. -1,
rear rank right hand man No. 2;
front rank No. 2 will be No. 3;
and his rear rank man No. 4 and so on)

No. 1, No. 2 First—Relief (Pahali Badali,)

No. 3, No. 4 Second—Relief (Doosari Badali,)

No. 5, No. 6 Third—Relief (Tisari Badali,)

First Relief Stand Fast, Remainder Stand at Ease (Pahali Badli Khari Rahegi Baqi Vishram)

At this except the first relief others will come to Vishram.

First Relief arms Slope Arms. (Pahli Badli Kandhe Shastra).

At this command both the old guard commander and the old Sentry will come to Slope Arms.

Quick March. (Tez Chal) Halt (Thorn). Relief form up (Badli Band)".

The If there are only up to four Sentries in the first relief they will form up in single rank according to their numbers.

6. When the first relief of the New Guard is sent out, the second in command of the old guard will accompany it to bring in the relieved sentries. At the command 'Relief Form Up', he will place himself on the right of the first sentry of the new Relief. The second in command of the New Guard will place himself on the left. The second in command of New Guard will then give the order. '*Relief Move to the Right in Single File—Right Turn. (Badali Ek File Men Dahine chalo—Dahine Mur)*'. He will then place himself on the right of the rear Sentry and give the order 'Relief Quick March.' The second in command of the Old Guard will then lead the relief to the sentry post and the sentries will be changed as detailed in Section 4. As soon as all the sentries are relieved, the seconds in command will change places and second in command of the Old Guard will assume command.

7. While the relief is marching round and changing sentries, the new Guard Commander will take over the property of the guard according to the list on the inventory board. At the same time both Guard Commanders will sign the charge reports. If there is only one Havaladar in the Guard he will take charge of the property, etc., after the sentries have been relieved. The guard commanders will then report their change of charge to the Orderly Officers, if present.

8. When the relief have returned, and all the men of the old and new Guard have fallen in, in their respective guards, the following ceremonials will be observed:

O.G.C.—Old Guard Attention. (Purani Garad Savdhan).

N.G.C.—New Guard Attention. (Nai Garad Savdhan).

O.G.C.—Old Guard Slope Arms. (Purani Garad Kandhe Shastra).

N.G.C.—New Guard Slope Arms. (Nai Garad Kandhe shastra).

O.G.C.—Move to the Right in File (or Single File) Right Turn.

(Purani garad, Ek file Men Dahine chal, Dahine Mur)

Note: - The Old Guard commander takes position on the right of the

Guard in line with the rear man, while the second in command takes his place.

O.G.C.—Quick March. (Purani Garad Tej Chal).

N.G.C.—New Guard Present Arms. (Nai Garad Salami Shastra).

O.G.C.—Old Guard Eyes Left—Eyes Front(Purani Garad Baen Dekh, Samne Dekh).

N.G.C.—New Guard Slope Arms. (Nai Garad Kandhe Shastra).

9. When the Old guard has left, the new Guard will be marched to the position previously occupied by the Old Guard in file or single file as the case may be and will be explained the details for turning out and the Stand To positions. The Guard will then be dismissed to the guard room, when the orders for the Guard will be read out. These orders will also be read and explained to the men of the first relief when they come off Sentry. To dismiss the guard the words of command will be "*Sentry Stand Fast, Remainder To The Guard Room—Dismiss (Sentry Khada Rahe, Baqi Guard Room Ko, Visarjan).*

10. If it is necessary to pay compliments during Guard Mounting, words of Command will be given to both guards by the senior officer or Havaladar.

11. The Old Guard will be marched to the original position of the new Guard and after the inspection of weapons and ammunition, will be dismissed.

Section 4

126. Posting Relieving, Marching, And Dismissing Sentries And Relief.

Posting Sentries.

1. When a sentry, who is to be posted on a new post, without a sentry, reaches a point just short of the post assigned to him, he will be halted. The sentry will then step off without further order and will halt and face in the required direction on his exact post. The Havaladar (normally the junior havaladar) will then read and explain to him his orders, the object for which he is posted, the front of his post and the extent of this beat.

Relieving Sentries. (Badali Santari)

2. On the approach of the relief, the sentry, with his rifle at the slope, will place himself in front of the sentry box. The Havaladar of the relief will halt the relief at about two paces from the sentry. The new sentry will then move out from the relief, and fall in on the left of the old sentry turning to face in the same direction. The Havaladar will read the orders to the new sentry and ensure that the sentry understands them.

3. '*Sentries Pass*'. (*Santri Badli Karo*). The old sentry will move to

his place in rear of the relief, and the new sentry will close two paces to his right.

(ii) *'Relief Quick March'. (Badli Tej Chal)*. The Relief will be marched off.. After all the sentries have been changed the relief will be brought in the center of both the Guards. They will then break off at the command of the old Guard Commander and join their respective Guards.

Section 5

127. Turning Out A Guard For Inspection By Day.

1. When the sentry sees the Inspecting Officer actually approaching the Quarter Guard, the sentry will come to attention, slope arms, and shout "*Guard Turn Out*". (*Garad Line Bana*)

All personnel of the Guard will move at the double and fall in on the prescribed line.

2. When the Inspecting Officer has taken post in front of the Guard, the Guard will give the appropriate salute on orders from the Guard Commander. For those who are entitled to, the bugler will sound the appropriate Salute.

Where the Inspecting Officer is so entitled, the command 'Present Arms' will be given after the Guard has fallen in, followed by the command 'Slope Arms' and 'Orders Arms' before the Guard is reported to the Inspecting Officer.

When the Inspecting Officer is taking the salute, all others who may be accompanying him will stand to attention behind him.

3. After the Guard has been brought to the 'Order Arms', the Guard Commander will report '*Guard Ready For Inspection (Ninkshan ke Liye Garad Hazir Hai)*' to the Inspecting Officer. No other form of report will be used.

4. After receiving the report of the Guard Commander the Inspecting Officer will go forward to inspect the Guard. The Guard Commander will Slope Arms, take a step forward, turns to the left and accompany the Inspecting Officer. All personnel of the party other than the Inspecting Officer will remain at attention wherever they may be till the inspection has been completed and the Guard dismissed. When the inspection is completed the Inspecting Officer will order the Guard Commander *To Dismiss/Turn in the Guard (Guard Line Tor, Guard Viserjan)*.

5. Having received instructions to Turn in the Guard/Dismiss the Guard from the Inspecting Officer, the Guard Commander will give the order '*Guard Slope Arms, Sentry Stand Fast, Remainder Dismiss', or Guard to the Guard Room Dismiss'*. All personnel of the Guard except the sentry will turn to their right, salute and then move off at the double to the Guard Room.

6. Having dismissed the Guard, the Guard Commander will turn

toward the Inspecting Officer and salute. He will then accompany the Inspecting Officer for an inspection of the Guard Room and its vicinity. Other persons who have accompanied the Inspecting Officer may now accompany him during the inspection.

7. After the inspection of the Guard Room etc., has been completed, the Guard Commander will again salute the Inspecting Officer and then break off and return to the Guard Room.

Section 6

128. Turning Out A Guard By Night.

1. When the Sentry sees the 'Grand Round' or the 'Visiting round' approaching his Guard, the sentry will come to the 'On Guard' position and halt the 'Round' approaching by shouting '*Halt Who Comes There*'. (*Thorn, Kauri Ata Hai*)

2. At the challenge 'Halt who comes there', the Grand or Visiting Round will halt and disclose his identity by saying 'Grand Round' or 'Visiting Round.' (*Bara Muayana Ya Chhota Muayana*)

3. When the sentry has received the answer to his challenge and is satisfied that the round approaching the Guard is a 'Grand' or 'Visiting' Round, he will Stand To the Guard by shouting '*Halt Grand (or Visiting) Round, Guard Stand To*'. (*Tham Bara (ya chhota) Muayana, Guard Hoshiar*) He will repeat this (Guard Stand To) three times, and remain at the 'On Guard' position. The Guard along with the Guard Commander will then come out of the Guard Room at the double and take positions in their respective Alarm Posts already detailed before hand.

4. The Guard Commander will approach the sentry and enquire from him 'Sentry What Round', and on a reply from the Sentry 'Grand' or 'Visiting' Round, he will give a pass to the Round by saying '*Advance Grand Round or Visiting Round, All is well*'. (*Age Barho, Bara Muayana ya Chhota Muayana, Sab Thik Hai*). The sentry in the meantime will take his position behind the Alarm Post already detailed, and so also the Guard Commander.

5. After the inspection is over, the Grand or Visiting Round will give the following orders:

(i) '*Stand Down the Guard*'. (*Garad Jagahe Chhore*)

Or

(ii) '*Fall in the Guard*'. (*Line Bana*)

6. If the Guard is required to 'Stand Down' they will leave their Alarm Posts and double up to the Guard Room.

The Guard Commander will move to the Guard Room after the inspecting Officer has recorded his inspection, etc., in the Guard Book and has left.

7. If the Guard is ordered to 'Fall In' the Gurd minus the sentries will fall in on the prescribed line and the same procedure will be followed as for Inspection by Day. The inspection of the Guard Room, etc., may not be done and the Guard may be ordered to be Dismissed after the inspection.

Section 7

129. General Rules For Sentries

1. A sentry when moving off on his beat will come to attention, take a pace forward, Slope Arms, turn to his right or left and move off in quick time.
2. On arrival at the end of his beat a sentry will halt and turn about by making two distinct turns outwards (*i.e.*, towards his front) to the right or left as the case may be and will move off again in quick time.
3. A sentry will not halt on his beat except in front of his box or post, unless to pay a compliment or when challenging.
4. When halting outside his box or post, a sentry will face his front, order arms, take a pace to the rear, and stand at ease.
5. A sentry will not quit his arms or post, lounge or converse with any one (except in the performance of his duty) nor will he take shelter in his box except in very bad weather.
6. A sentry will always remain alert and will pay all necessary compliments smartly.

Sentries Challenging

7. A sentry will challenge all persons or parties during the night approaching his post when he is doubtful as to whether the person or party approaching is authorized to pass or when he is suspicious as to his or their reasons for approaching.
8. When challenging on the part of a sentry is necessary, it will be carried out as follows:

When a person or party approaches his post, the sentry will as soon as the person or party is within speaking distance, come to 'On Guard' position and call out 'Halt who comes there'. He will repeat this in the language most suitable to the locality, without disclosing his position. When the person or party has halted, he will call out 'Advance One' (Ek age Barho) (Translated if necessary). If and when the sentry is satisfied as to the identity of the person or party, he will say, 'Pass Friend All is Well' (Chalo Dost, Sab Thik Hai) remaining of Guard until the person or party, has passed. If not satisfied regarding the identity or *bona fides* of the person or party, the sentry will Stand To the Guard and report to the Guard Commander. If in answer to the challenge the sentry receives the reply 'Grand' or 'Visiting Round' and the sentry is satisfied, he will follow the same procedure as laid down in Section 6.

NOTE: By night sentries will invariably challenge all persons approaching the Guard Room. If in reply to the challenge he receives the reply 'Friends' and he is satisfied with the identity of the person he will allow him to pass.

Section 8

130, General Instructions And Compliments To Be Given By Guards And Sentries.

General

1. Sentries always march with sloped arms and bayonets fixed, and always turn outwards by making two distinct turns left or right, as the case may be, *i.e.*, never face the Sentry Post.
2. Bayonets will always remain fixed in the Guard Room.
3. Every relief will be inspected by the Guard Commander on going out and returning.
4. Compliments will not be paid to unarmed parties.

Compliments by Guards

5. Day (*Between Reveille and Retreat*).

- (a) The President and Governors, the latter within states, with the bugler sounding the National Salute.
- (b) The Prime Minister, Union Ministers and State Ministers within their jurisdictions with the bugler sounding the General Salute. For the Prime Minister, National Salute can be played with the special permission of the State Government.
- (c) Police Officers of and above the rank of Dy. Inspector General of Police and officers of and above the rank of Major General in the Army or equivalent ranks in the Navy and the Air Force with the bugler sounding the General Salute.
- (d) The District Superintendent of Police on his first visit to the guard each day.
- (e) Grand Rounds.
- (f) All armed parties numerically superior to the strength of the guard.
- (g) At the commencement of Reveille and Tattoo sounding.
- (h) To any other police officer of and above the rank of Sub Inspector, the guard will turn out once a day when he is detailed as Orderly/Duty Officer and the guard commander, only will give Butt Salute.

NOTE: (i) It is necessary to pay compliments while guards are

actually being mounted or changed over, the senior officer or N.C.O. giving the command.

(ii) The above orders regarding compliments do not apply to Special Guards mounted at the residences or camps of Presidents, Union Ministers, Governors and State Ministers. Such guards will not pay compliments to persons of lesser rank or status. When visited by police officers on duty, they will turn out at the slope.

6. Night (Between Retreat and Reveille).

Guards will not turn out after Retreat, or before Reveille, except at Tattoo, on the approach of an armed party, in cases of an alarm, or to receive Grand and Visiting Rounds, nor will they during this period pay any compliment except to Grand Rounds to whom they will present Arms.

Compliments by Sentries

7. Day.

- (a) A sentry will Present Arms, to Police Officers wearing the State Emblem or badges of higher rank and to officers of the Indian Army, Navy, and Air Force of equivalent ranks.
- (b) Before paying a compliment, a sentry will always halt and turn to his front. If standing in a Sentry Box, he will salute by coming to attention.
- (c) A sentry will Present Arms to armed parties and will salute unarmed parties.
- (d) A sentry will give Butt Salute to police officers of and above the rank of Sub-Inspectors who are not entitled to Present Arms.
- (a) *A sentry will not Present Arms to any armed party after dark.*
- (b) As long as a sentry can discern an officer, he will halt and turn to his front on his approach and will pay the correct compliments as for day.

8. Special Instructions.

The above orders regarding compliments by guards and sentries do not apply to special guards mounted at the residences or camps of the President, or of the Governor within his jurisdiction. Such guards will not Present Arms to persons of lesser rank or status than of those for whom they are provided. When visited by officers on duty they will turn out with arms at the slope. The sentries at such residences or camps will Present Arms to the President/Governor and to armed corps only. They will salute (butt salute, if at the slope; coming to attention, if at the order) officers of lesser rank and unarmed parties.

CHAPTER XVIII

GUARD OF HONOUR

The Guard of Honor to be mounted will depend on the status of the personage as well as on the occasion.

Section 1

131. Composition, Strength & Occasions

| <u>S. No.</u> | <u>Personage</u> <u>Entitled</u> | <u>Strength</u> | <u>Remarks</u> <u>(Rank & file)</u> |
|---------------|--|-----------------|--|
| 1 | President | 150 | Two Bands to be in attendance. |
| 2 | Vice President | 100 | One Band to be in attendance. |
| 3 | Prime Minister | 100 | -Do- |
| 4 | Governor | 100 | -Do- |
| 5 | Union Home Minister/ MOS (Home)/Dy. Minister (Home) | 50 | -Do- |
| 6 | Chief Minister | 50 | -Do- |
| 7 | State Home Minister | 35 | -Do- |
| 8 | ****Director General of Police/ Addl. DGP. | 20-35 | One Band to be attendance when available. |
| 9 | ****Inspector General of Police | 12-20 | Two Buglars |
| 10 | ****Dy. Inspector General of Police | 12 | -Do- |
| 11 | Head of Foreign State | 150 | Two Bands to be attendance |
| 12 | Vice-Head of Foreign State | 100 | One Band to be in Attendance. |
| 13 | Head of Diplomatic mission in | 100 | -Do- |
| 14 | Head of a Foreign Police Force. | 20-35 | -Do- |

*As small districts have less strength so flexibility of strength has been kept.

(b) Occasions

| <u>S. No.</u> | <u>Personage entitled</u> | <u>Occasions</u> |
|---------------|---|---|
| 1 | President | On arrival and/or departure when public. All official visits are not public. Only formal visits notified as such by the Central Govt. through local civil authorities and/or Army Hqrs' will be treated as public. |
| 2 | Vice President | At special occasions concerned with police forces. |
| 3 | Prime Minister | -Do- |
| 4 | Governor | (i) On special occasions, Governor will be presented with Guard of Honor within jurisdiction. (ii) On arrival to take over appointment once only. (iii) On departure or relinquishing such appointment once only. |
| 5 | Union Home Minister/ MOS (Home)/Dy. Minister (Home) | On special occasions connected with police, which should include a visit to a State Police/CPO/Office/ establishment. |
| 6 | Chief Minister | -Do- |
| 7 | State Home Minister | -Do- |
| 8 | Director General of Police/ Addl. DGP. | On official visits to a Distt. Hqrs/ Armed Police Bus/Police Training Schools, when the Visit is for Inspection/Ceremonial purposed, both on arrival end on departure. |
| 9 | Inspector Gneral of Police | -Do- |
| 10 | Dy. Inspector General of Police | -Do- |
| 11 | Foreign Dignitaries | Foreign dignitaries will be presented the Guard of Honor only when they are on official visit to a State Police/ CPO Office/Establishments. |

Special Note

The entitlement for the President, Vice-President, Prime Minister and Governor have been well laid out in the various notifications of Union and State Governments. For other personages, Section 1, para 131 only means to provide guidelines. The entitlement for other persons and occasions on which Guard of Honor is to be presented, should be notified in the Central/State Government Gazette.

Section 2

132. Dress

The Dress of all Guards of Honor will be Review Order Dress but Specific order should be issued deciding the exact uniforms to be worn on each occasion.

Section 3

133. Formation

(a) *Guard.*

The Guard of Honor will be sized and equalized as for a company. Where possible, it will be formed up facing the direction from which the personage for whom it is mounted will approach.

The Guard will form up in two equal divisions in two ranks with a distance of 4 paces between the front and rear ranks. It will be dressed at intervals of 24".

The interval for the escort party of colors between the two divisions will be 3 paces. In case no colors are carried, this interval may be ignored.

(b) *Officers*

With Colours.

(i) G.Os. and Inspectors/Sub-Inspectors:—The Commander 4 paces in front of the second file from the right. The next senior G.O./Inspector/ Sub-Inspector, two paces in front of the second from the left. The Junior Officer/Inspector/Sub-Inspector (with the Color) two paces in front of the center of the Guard.

(ii) Havaldars: —The senior Hav. Major will be the right Guide of the first division and the next junior left-guide of the second division. The third junior will be the right Guide of the second division and the junior most left of the first division.

Without Colours.

(iii) The Commander: —Four paces in front of the center of the Guard; the next senior G.O./Inspector/Sub-Inspector, two paces in front of the second file from the right; the third junior G.O./Inspector/Sub-Inspector, two paces in front of the second file from the left.

(iv) Havaldars: —Their posts will be the same as detailed in para (b) (ii) above.

(v) On special occasions when the guard strength is increased to 150 all ranks, and when colors are not carried, the Guard Commander will be 8 paces in front and in center of the Guard. The next senior G.O./ Inspector/Sub-Inspector, three paces in front of the second file from the right, the third junior G.O./Inspector/Sub-Inspector, 3 paces in front of the second file from the left.

(c) Band.

(i) The Band will form up on the right flank in line with the Guard and 7 paces from the right Guide of the Guard. The band will be in Column in four files with 2 paces between each file. The Drum major will be 3 paces in front of the front rank of the band and the Band Master 2 paces in front of him.

(ii) When no band is available, two buglers may be provided who will fall in line on the right of the Guard of Honor. Similarly if there is no space on the right flank, the Band may be positioned behind the Guard.

Section 4

134. Aide-de-Canip

There will always be two As D.C. who will stand on either side of the dais, 3 paces to the right and left of the front edge.

Section 5

135. Conducting Officer

The Conducting Officer (civil or police officer who receives the V.I.P. and conducts him to the Saluting Base will, after conducting the V.I.P. to the dais, position himself in the center rear of the dais and at 3 paces from it.

Section 6

136. Colours

Colours may be brought on parade by the Guard of Honor, in accordance with the custom of the State Police. Colors will not be fought on parade when an inter-State Guard of Honor is provided.

Section 7

137. Salute

Only one salute before the Inspection will be given. As. D.C. will not

salute when either the National or General Salute is played.

National Salute will be given to—

- (i) The President of the Republic of India.
 - (ii) Governors within their own States.
- Other dignitaries entitled to salute on ceremonial occasions will be given the 'General Salute'.

Section 8

138. National Anthem.

There are two versions of the National Anthem.

- (i) Full version, which can be played approximately for 52 seconds.
- (ii) Short version of nine bars, which can be played approximately for 20 seconds.

The Full Version should be played on the following occasions: —

- (a) On all occasions when the President is present in person (including broadcasts by the President on National Days).
- (b) On all occasions for Governors when they attend Ceremonial Parades, Guard of Honor within their own States.
- (c) At Republic Day and Independence Day Parades when the National Flag is broken at the mast.
- (d) The National Anthem can also be played for the Prime Minister of Indian on special occasions with the prior approval of the State Government.

The short version may be played on all other occasions according to instructions.

Whenever National Anthem is played, all ranks will come to attention and all officers of and above the rank of Head Constable, if in uniform, will give proper salute. Officers in attendance on the chief dignitary taking the salute will only come to attention and will not salute when National Anthem is played.

Section 9

139. Inspection.

The following procedure will be observed for inspection

- (a) After paying the proper compliments i.e., National Salute/General Salute to the personage for whom it is mounted, the Guard should be brought to the position of 'Order Arms'. The Colors, if carried, will remain at the 'Carry'
- (b) The Guard Commander will then march forward and report to the V.I.P. He will do so in a suitably loud voice and say "*Guard of Honour*"

consisting of _____ officers and _____ other Ranks is ready for your inspection, Sir". (Ke Afsran Aur Jawan ke Samman Garad, Nirikshan ke liye Hazir Hai, Shriman).

- (c) The V.I.P. will come down from the dais and the Guard Commander will conduct him, moving on the V.I.P.'s right side and a little in front of him. He will walk and not do the 'Slow March'.
- (d) As.D.C. will not march in front of the V.I.P.
- (e) The V.I.P. will inspect the band passing behind the Drum Major of the Band. The Band will not turn their heads and eyes towards the V.I.P. during the inspection, but will look straight to the front.
- (f) As soon as the V.I.P. passes the left hand man of the band, the Band Master will turn about, get the band ready and start playing. Taking the time from the first beat of the drum, every officer and man of the Guard, (*i.e.*, both the front and the rear rank) except the officer carrying the color, will turn his heads and eyes towards the V.I.P. *i.e.*, he will look at him. As the V.I.P. moves on, the officers and men- will also move their heads and eyes looking at him all the time. If the V.I.P. stops during the inspection, the movement of heads will also stop.
- (g) The band will stop playing as soon as the V.I.P. has finished the inspection, and the Guard taking the time from the last note of the music, will turn their heads and eyes to the front.
- (h) If the Band is positioned in the rear, the Band will not be inspected and if no Band is available the heads and eyes of every officer and man of the Guard except the officers carrying colors will turn to the right together as soon as the V.I.P. has completed his inspection of the Buglers who will look straight during the inspection.
- (i) Only the front rank of the Guard will be inspected. The V.I.P. will move in front of the officers and the colors *i.e.*, he will inspect the Guard from a distance of 3-4 paces from the front.
- (j) The V.I.P. will be conducted by the Guard Commander towards the Conducting Officer. The Conducting Officer would have, moved from his position behind the dais to a new position suitable to take the V.I.P. away for the introductions. When the V.I.P. is being handed over to the Conducting officer, the Guard Commander will salute the V.I.P. The Guard Commander must be prepared to shake hands with the V.I.P. should the latter offer to do so; in that case he will immediately hold the sword, (if carrying a sword) in the left hand.

Section 10

140. General.

1. The Guard of Honor will not march off or 'Stand Easy' till the personage for whom it is mounted has left the place or reception.
2. The Guard of Honor will not march past.

3. No Guard of Honor will be provided in any station between the hours of sun-set and sun-rise.
 4. The Guard of Honor should be provided for dignitaries who are entitled to it and not for others. The strength of Guard of Honor should never be less than SO and it should not be mounted at odd time and place.
 5. In certain special circumstances, such as limitation of space, where it is not practicable to follow the above instructions in its entirety, suitable modifications may be made to meet the occasion.
-

CHAPTER XIX
FIRING A FEU-DE-JOIE

Section 1

141. Occasions

FEU-DE JOIE will be fired only on the following occasions:-

- (i) Republic Day
- (ii) Independence Day
- (iii) State Day
- (iv) Raising Day of the Force/Unit

Section 2

142. Procedure And Words of Command—

1. The procedure of firing of the FEU-DE-JOIE will be as under: -

- (a) The troops will be drawn up in line in three ranks in open order, rifles at the order and bayonets fixed.
- (b) *The parade Will Fire a FEU-DE-JOIE, Officers and JCOs (and colors) Take Post {Parade Harsh Fire Karegi, Afisers Aur JCOs (Aur Rangin) Jagah Sambhal.J*
- (c) The Police colors will be brought to the CARRY and the colour party will advance six paces on the command of the senior officer.
- (d) The colors will not be lowered during the firing of a FEU-DE-JOIE.

Standing Load (Khare Bhar)

2. The guides and all NCOs and men in the ranks will load. The muzzles of the rifles will be inclined upwards, so as to clear the heads of the men in front. The supernumerary ranks will remain at the order.

Present (Pesh Kare)

3. Rifles will be brought to the position for firing at an angle of 135 degrees. Heads will be kept perfectly still and no attempt will be made to aim.

Commence (Shuru)

4. The right hand man of the front rank will commence the fire, which will run down the front, up the middle and down the rear rank as quickly as possible.

NOTE: -

- (i) The *FEU DE-JOIE* will be fired in three parts or series.
- (ii) When the left hand man of the rear rank has fired, the band will

play the first part of the National Anthem, the troops remaining at the Present, Offices at the salute. On the last note of the band, Unit Commander will again give "Load" and the men will again act as above, while the band will play the second part of the National Anthem. Three series will be fired in all, the whole of the National Anthem being played on completion of the last series.

- (iii) Some times it is necessary to fire FEU-DE-JOIE with a troop in two ranks. In such a case the firing is to be done from right to left in the front and left to right in the rear rank. The band will play the National Anthem after the right hand man of the rear rank has fired.

Unload (Khali Rare)

(5) At the conclusion of the National Anthem, Unit Commander will give the Command "Unload" when the men will come to the loading position and will unload, holding their rifles at an angle of 135 degrees.

Order—Arms Officers (And Colors) Take Post.

(6) The color party will resume its position in line and order arms on the Command of the senior officer, the colors being brought to the order.

Section 3

143. Giving Of Cheers At Parades (Parade Par Jai Bolna)

1. Cheers will be given on the following occasions: —
 - (a) To the President when actually taking a parade.
 - (b) For the President at Republic Day and Independence Day parades.
 - (c) To the VIPs and other senior police officials at their farewell parade.
2. (a) Cheers will be given: —
 - (i) After the inspection and before the march past, when not advancing in Review order.
 - (ii) After paying of the compliments in Review order.
 - (b) When a speech is being given by the personage, the cheers will be given after the speech whatever ceremonial form may be in force.
3. The drill for giving cheers will be as follows: —
 - (a) The parade is brought to the position of "Savadhan".
 - (b) The parade Commander gives a warning order "*parade will give three cheers*" (*Parade Tin Bar Jai Bolegi*).
 - (c) The Parade Commander then shouts: —
 - (i) The actual name of the personage on occasion mentioned in paras 1 (a) and 1(c).

- (ii) The word "Rashtrapati" on the occasion mentioned in para 1(b).
 - (d) The parade will then shout 'Ki Jai', and every rank at the same time will raise his left arms to full length above his head.
 - (e) The drill given in sub-para (c) and (d) will be repeated three times.
-

CHAPTER XX

PASSING OUT PARADE (DEEKSHANT PARADE)

144. Introduction

1. Passing Out Parade, is held in Police Academies, Police Training Colleges, Recruits Training Schools and other Police Training establishments to mark the conclusion of training of personnel (cadets and recruits) in that establishment.
2. The Passing Out Parade is a ceremonial occasion. Therefore, the units should make careful preparation as this will- reflect the standard of training imparted, before a number of invitees and general public.
3. The Passing Out Parade involves 'Oath Taking' by the trainees and their induction to a professional life. Thus this is a solemn occasion to which the trainees look forward and take pride. The trainees should be motivated to give their best in the Parade.
4. To achieve these objectives, adequate number of rehearsals should be done under proper supervision at all levels.
5. This chapter deals with the standard procedure to be followed during this parade. However, officers are expected to interpret these instructions reasonably and intelligently bearing in mind that slight alternations can always be made to suit the strength of the trainees.

Section 1

145. General Instructions

The Passing Out Parade being a ceremonial occasion, the instructions regarding General Arrangements, Inspection ground, Unit organisation, Sizing of units, Parade formation, Receiving the Inspecting Officer (including VVIPs), Inspection Post of officers, March Past in various formations, and Advancing in Review Order as contained in Chapter XVI

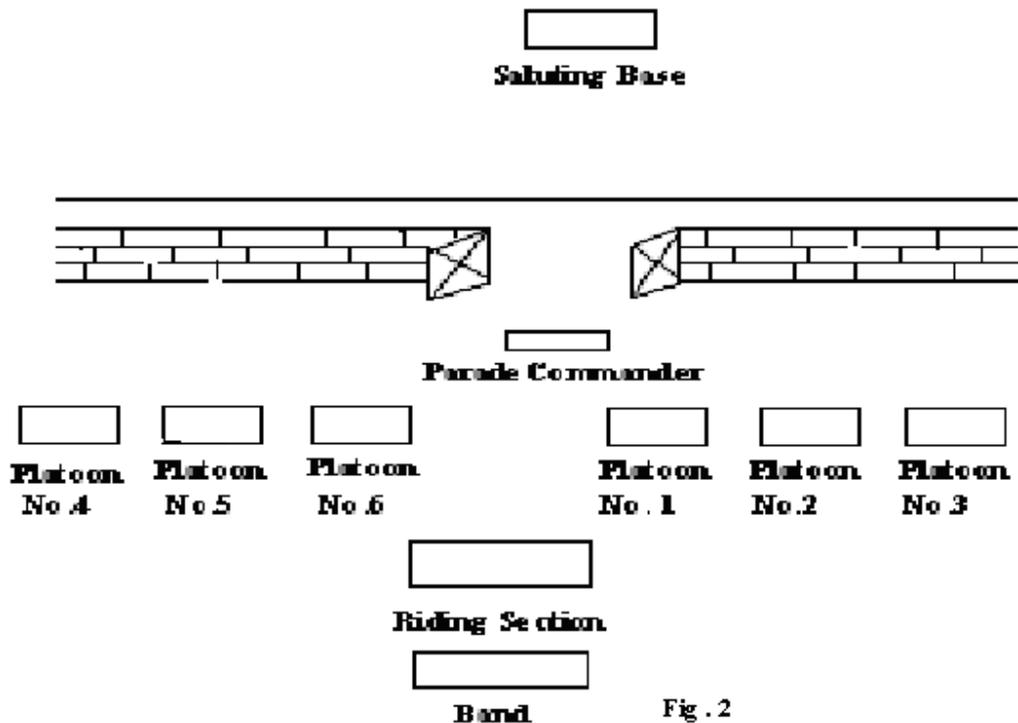


Fig . 2

(ii) Fort-gate is opened by two gate-keepers 20 minutes before the commencement of the Parade. Two bugler enter the parade ground from the sides of the center wall and march up to the inspection line (For description of inspection line, passing line, etc., please see Section 2 of Chapter XVI) and will sound Markers Call. The buglers turn and march back to the rear of the fort wall. The Markers will take their positions on the inspection line. The buglers and lancers also take up their respective positions on the top of the fort wall and on the sides of the parade ground.

(iii) The buglers sound Fall in Call (Advance Call) 3 minutes after the Markers Call. There upon the parade commander will bring the parade to "Savdhan" and "Kandhe Shastr" positions, and march it to the inspection line, giving the command "Parade Dahine Baen Se Tej Chal". On crossing the Gate, the right side Platoons (Nos. 1, 2, 3) will proceed towards the right of the wall; the left side ones (Nos. 6, 5, 4) marching towards the left of the wall. On reaching the markers, the platoons will mark time. On a drum beat, given after all the platoons have reached their respective positions on the inspection line, the parade will halt. The parade commander will give the following commands in succession:-

"Parade, Dahine Baen Mur",

"Parade, Bazu Shastra",

"Parade Khuli Line Chal",

"Parade Madhye Saj".

The Riding Section will form up on the left. The Band will form up 8 paces behind the inspection line in the Center.

(iv) The parade is now • in ready position (See Figure-3 given below)

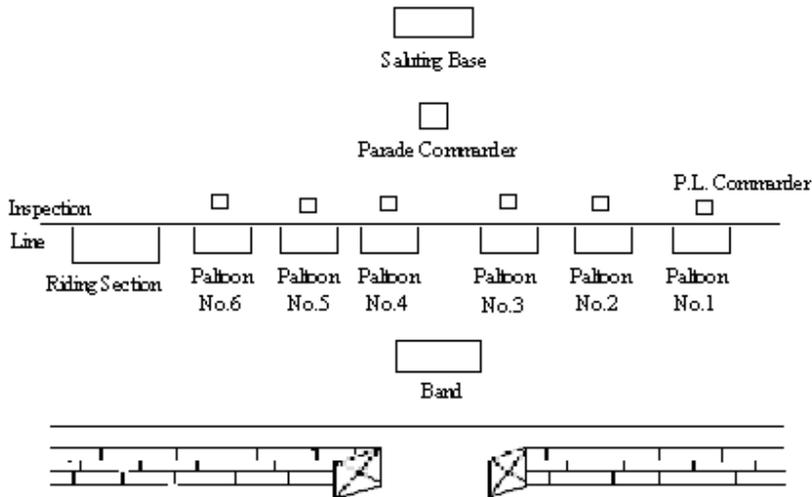


Fig . 3

N.B. :

1. It is seen that big institutions have permanent forts especially made for the passing out parades. These forts have ramparts. The buglers should be stationed on the ramparts or any other convenient places, if the wall has no ramparts.
2. If the institution does not have the permanent fort, it is desirable that a Temporary Fort' of canvass cloth is made. This will lend color and pageant to the ceremony.
3. Mounted squad and lancers will be included in the Parade depending upon the availability.

SECTION-3

147. Presenting Compliments to the Head of the Organisation / Institution

(i) The Head of the Institution / Organisation will arrive 10 minutes before the commencement of the program. The moment his arrival is sighted, the parade commander will bring the parade to "Savdhan" and "Kandhe Shastr" positions. Immediately after the head of the institution has taken position at the Saluting Base, the parade commander will give the command "Parade, General Salute, Salami Shastr". The Band will play the tune "General Salute", at the conclusion of which the parade commander will give the following commands successively:

- "Parade Kandhe Shastra",
- "Parade Bazu Shashtra",
- "Parade Vishram".

- (ii) After taking salute, the head of the institution will proceed to the alighting point to receive the VIP invited to review the "Deekshant Parade" and wait for his arrival.

SECTION 4

148. Arrival of the VIP/VVIP

As soon as the VIP/WIP is sighted, the buglers will sound "Fanfare". The Parade commander will immediately give the Command; "Deekshant Parade, Savdhan", followed by "Parade kandhe Shastr".

As soon as the VIP, escorted by the head of the institution, takes up his position on the Saluting Base, the parade will present arms to him, the parade commander giving the following words of command:

"Parade, General Salute, Salami Shastr"

The Band will play the tune "General Salute" and the parade will stay in that position till the tune is over. (If the VIP is the President of India or a Governor, the "Rashtriya Salute" will be given and the Band will play National Anthem) The parade commander will, thereafter, bring the parade to "Kandhe Shastr" and "Bazu Shastr" positions.

N.B. Regarding 'Salute' and playing of National Anthem instructions contained in Section 7 and Section 8 of Chapter XVIII (Chapter on Guard of Honor) will be followed.

SECTION-5

149. Review of the Parade by the VIP

The moment the parade comes to "Bazu Shastr" position, the commander will march towards Saluting Book, halt, pay compliments to VIP and report –

"Shriman, ("Mahodayaa", if the VIP is a lady), Deekshant Parade Aapke Nirikshan Ke Liye Hazir Hai"

Meanwhile, the inspection jeep (if one is planned to be used), stationed close at hand, will reach the Saluting Base. The VIP will stand in the front portion of the jeep, and the head of the institution and the parade commander in the rear portion, with the former on the right and the latter on his left side. The jeep will then proceed to the right of the parade and pass through the front rank of the parade from right to left (in case a jeep is not intended to be used, the VIP will be escorted on foot to the inspection line with the head of the institution on his right and the parade commander on the left, both moving one step behind the VIP).

As soon as the VIP (whether on the inspection jeep or on foot) passes the right guide of the first platoon, the Band will start playing one of the slow march tunes and will continue to play the same till the review of the parade by the VIP is over. (If the VIP is on foot, the parade commander and the head of the institution will move in slow march during the review).

SECTION 6

150. Oath Taking

- (i) After the VIP's return to the Saluting Base, the parade commander will salute him and seek permission for oath taking in the following words:

"Shriman" ("Mahodayaa" for a lady VIP), Shapath Grahan Karne Ki Agyaa Pardan Karen"

The Parade Commander will once again salute the VIP, turn about and return to his original position near the inspection line.

- (ii) Parade commander will, thereafter, bring the parade to "Kandhe Shastr" position and call the 'Color Party' (consisting of bearers of the National Flag and that of the institution /unit, and the escorts), using the word of command, "Nishan Toli Parade Par".

Thereupon the 'Nishan Toli' (Color Party) with National Flag and Unit Flag, will march towards (and in front of) of inspection line and reach up to 14 paces beyond the right guide of the first platoon. As soon as the 'Nishan Toli' starts marching, the parade will present arms to the national Flag on the command of the parade commander:

"Parade Rashtriya Salute, Salami Shastr"

The band will play the full version of the National Anthem. During the "Rashtriya Salute", all the guests, invitees and others present at the parade ground will stand up and officers in uniform, among them will salute. Suitable announcements will be made beforehand in this regard.

Upon the 'Nishan Toli' reaching its designated position on the right hand side of the parade, the Nishan Toli Commander will give the command, "Nishan Toli, Salami Shastr", on which the 'Nishan Toli' will also present arms. The institution / unit flag will be dipped. All this while, the parade will remain in "Salami Shastr" position.

The parade commander will now bring the parade and the 'Nislian Toli' to "Kandhe Shastr" and "Bazu Shastr" positions. All the invitees and others will resume their seats.

- (iii) The parade commander will, thereafter, give the following commands to the Platoon commanders:

"Commanders Wapas Kirch"

"Commanders Jagah Lo"

On the first command, the platoon commanders will return their swords. On the second command, they will take a right turn and wait for a drum beat on which they will march to the right of their respective platoons and halt. On a second drum beat, they will turn about.

- (iv) The parade commander will then give the command "Nishan Jagah Lo", upon which the two flag bearers will march forward and take position 7 paces before the right guide of the First Platoon, the national

flag being in front and the institution unit flag behind it. Simultaneously, the parade participants will move their left hands and take hold of their rifles with it (a drum beat will be given for this). On the next from beat, they will raise their right hands to an angle of 45° to the horizontal.

- (v) On the parade commander's command, "Nishan, Karyavahi Shuru Kar", the two flag bearers will start moving in slow march in front of the parade, the national flag leading. The Band will play one of the slow march tunes. When the flag bearers cross the left guide of the last platoon, the middle rank will hold their rifles with left hand and raise their right hand on drum beats. Simultaneously the front flank will cut their hands to "Savdhan" position. Like wise, after passing completely through the rear flank, the flag bearers will start quick march and come to the center of the parade and halt, facing towards the parade.
- (vi) For the Oath-taking, a drum beat will again be given upon which the cadets will raise their right hands to 45° to the horizontal, holding their rifles with left hands, as before.
- (vii) The Head of the Institution Organisation will now read out the prescribed oath (breaking its text in convenient parts) in the language spoken and understood by the cadets who will repeat every part of it as soon as read out by the former. Once the text of the oath is completed, the cadets will, on a drum beat, swiftly cut their right hands and on the second beat, they will take the rifle in their right hands and resume the "Savdhan" position.
- (viii) The parade commander will now give the command, "Commanders Jagah Lo", upon which the platoon commanders will take their positions in front of their respective platoons; the Nishan Toli will simultaneously turn to the left and join its escorts.
- (ix) The parade will, thereafter, give the command "Commanders Nikal Kirch", upon which the platoon commanders will fake out their swords. The parade will be brought to "Kandhe Shastr" position.
- (x) The parade commander will now order the 'Colour Party' to move out with the command, "Nishan Toli, Kooch Kar", upon which the 'Nishan Toli' will march off, passing in front of the parade. The parade commander will immediately give the command, "Parade, Rashtriya Salute, Salami Shastr", upon which the parade will present arms to the national flag. The Band will play full version of the National Anthem. All the invitees, guests and other present at the parade ground will once again stand up and officers in uniform, among them, will salute. Suitable announcements will once again be made beforehand in this regard.
- (xi) The spectators will assume their seats once the National Anthem is over and the 'Colour Party' is seen. off. the parade commander will give the commands, "Parade, Kandhe Shastr" and "Parade, Bazu Shastr".

SECTION 7

151. Ceremonial March Past

(i) Once the 'Colour Party' has marched off and the parade has come to "Bazu Shastr" position, the parade commander will give the following commands to commence the March Past: —

"Parade, Nikat Line Chal"

"Parade, Kandhe Shastr"

"Parade, Tin-o-Tin Column men Dahine Chalega, Dahine Mur"

"Baen Se Tej Chal"

(The Band will start playing one of the quick march tunes)

"Baen Disha Badal, Baen Ghoom".

Formation into Close Column

(ii) As the parade approaches the march past line in front and the left of the Saluting Base. (Point 'A') the parade commander will give the word of command, "Parade, tham Kar, Baen Disha Platoon Ke Nikat Column Banaa".

Individual platoon commanders will then bring their respective platoons to halt and make them turn to the left, in succession. When the last platoon has thus formed up, the parade commander will give the command, "Parade, Bazu Shastr", and immediately thereafter order the dressing of the platoons with the words of Command "Parade Dahine Saj".

On this command, the right guides of all the platoons will turn to their right, march out 5 paces, halt, turn about and take up the dressing of the front line, one after the other, the right guides of all the platoons, in succession, giving the command "Hilo Mat". Immediately after the right guide of the last platoon has finished his command to the first line, all the right guides will together take a left turn, move a step forward, take right turn and respect the action for dressing of the second line. All these movements will once again be repeated for the third line of each platoon in the same sequence. Immediately after the right guide of the last platoon has given the command "Hilo Mat" to the last line of his platoon, all the right guides will together take a turn to the right, move two steps forward, take a left turn to their original positions in alignment with the first line of their respective platoons. The guides will take care to coordinate all their movements with each other throughout.

After dressing of the platoons is over, the parade commander will give the word of command 'Samne Dekh' on which the entire parade will simultaneously come to the 'eyes front' position, and platoon commanders and the parade commander will turn about. All the right guides will step out together, march 5 paces, halt and turn to their right. The parade is now ready for the March Past.

March Past:

- (iii) The Parade Commander will now give the Commands: "Parade, Kandhe Shastr"
'Parade, Platoon Ke Column Men Manch Se Guzregi-Number One Platoon Aage".

Immediately after this command, the platoon commander of the 1st platoon will give the command, "Number EK Platoon, Aage Barhega, Dahine, Se Dhire Chal". The first platoon will, on this command, start slow march. The Band will play slow march" tune. The remaining platoons will follow in succession at the column distance, each platoon commander giving the command independently to his own platoon to start marching. The parade commander will start marching as soon as Number 1 platoon commences its march.

- (iv) When the Platoon No. 1 is approaching Point 'B'. parade commander will give the command 'Parade Bari-Bari Khuli line Chal".

Thereupon, each platoon commander will give the following commands independently to his own platoon on reaching the Marked Flag Points.

- (i) No..... Platoon Khuli Line (At point B) (Platoons will oneorder & continue marching)
(ii) No Platoon Dahine Dekh (At Point C)
(iii) No.....Platoon Samne Dekh (At point D)

At the command Platoon Dahine Dekh the entire platoon except the right guide will turn 'Eyes right'. The Platoon Commander will simultaneously salute the VIP. The parade commander salutes independently.

- (v) When all platoons have cleared saluting base and between point 'D' & 'E', the parade commander will give the command for close order 'Parade Bari Nikat Line Chal. There upon each platoon commander will give the command independently to his own platoon, on reaching the marked flag point. The word of command for platoon commander is 'Platoon No...Nikat Line'.

On reaching the corner flag (Point F) parade commander gives the word of command "Parade, Tham Kar, No. 1. Platoon par, Platoono-ka-Nikat Column Banaa". On this parade will be formed again in the close column of platoon No. 1. For this each platoon commander will give the command "No.....Platoon Tham' independently on raching at close column distance—after No. 1 platoon halts near corner point.

After this, the parade commander gives word of command

"Parade Dahine Se Bari Bari, Tinon-tin ke Column Mein Aage Barh, Parade Dahine Mur".

(vi) As soon as the parade is turned to its right, No. 1. platoon Commander will advance his platoon by giving word of command "No. 1 Platoon, Baen Se Tej Chal, Baen Ghoom" and thereafter all platoon commanders will advance their respective platoons and march along with inspection line. The Parade has to pass through the saluting base again in quick march, in platoons and such on reaching near passing line again the parade will be advanced in the platoons columns.

On reaching near the passing line (Point 'A') the parade commander will give the word of command "Parade baen Disha Platoon-ke-column Mein Aage Barb".

There upon, each platoon commander will advance the platoon by giving the following word of command:

"NO:.....Platoon Aage Barhega baen Mur—Dahine Se"

Similarly, platoon commanders will give following words of command while passing in front of saluting base:

"No.....Platoon Dahine Dekh" (Point C)

"No.....Platoon Samne Dekh" (Point D)

On reaching the corner flag Parade Commander will give the word of command:

"Parade, Dahine Se Bari Bari Tinon Tin Ke Column Mein Age Barn,"

There upon on reaching near the corner, the parade will again advance in column of threes for forming up on Inspection Line. For this, each platoon commander gives the following words of command:

"No.....Platoon Tinon tin Men Dahine Chalega—Dahine Mur"

On this, each platoon will right turn on the marked place and Platoons wheel twice and again near the inspection line on commands "Baen Ghoom".

(vii) Once the parade reaches the original position i.e. on inspection line, Parade commander will give word of command "Parade Tham", on which the parade will come to halt. The Parade Commander will, thereafter, give the following further commands: —

"Parade Agage Barhega, Baen Mur" "Parade Khuli Line Chal" "Parade Madhye Saj"

The parade, on these commands, will turn to the left and move to open order position. On a drum beat, the platoons on the right side of the Fort Wall Gate will turn their heads to the left and those

on the right flank will look towards right and dress themselves up. At the next drum beat, all will come to 'eyes front' position.

N.B.:

1. The procedure described in Section-7 involves two times March Past by the parade before the saluting base. First in slow time in Platoons column (Please see Section 17 of Chapter XVI of the manual) and secondly in quick time in platoon column (Please see section 16 of Chapter XVI. This procedure should be adopted for the passing out parade for officer—cadets.
2. In the passing out parade of recruit-constables, when the number of trainees very, large, march *past*, in slow time way be omitted.
3. While marching past in slow time, the procedure involves a 'Halt' on passing line at the right corner (Near Point T' after all the platoons have marched past the saluting base in slow march) for formation of parade in close column. This can be done in continuous marching (*i.e.* without halt) also as outlined in section 17 of chapter XVI.

SECTION - 8

152. Advance in review order, Report by the Head of the Institution, Prize Distribution and VIP's address.

- (i) "Once the dressing is over, the parade Commander will advance the parade in review order, by giving the command "Parade, Sameeksha Kram Mein madhye Se Tej Chal" Upon this command, the parade will march 15 paces forward and automatically come to halt (on further word of command will be given for halt). As soon as the parade halts, it will present General Salute on the following commands of the Parade Commander: —

"Parade, Kandhe Shastra"

"Parade, General Salute, Salami Shastra"

"Parade, Kandhe Shastra"

"Parade, Bazu Shastra"

"Parade, Vishram"

The Head of the Institution will now present his report.

- (II) Once this is over, the parade commander will take the prize winners forward for receiving their prizes and trophies. The sequence of commands will be as follows: —

"Parade, Savdhan"

"Commanders Waapas Kirch" (on this parade Commander and Platoon Commanders will return their swords.)"

"Parade, Vishram"
"Puraskar Vijeta, Savdhan"
"Puraskar vijeta, Line Ban"

A drum beat will be given on the command "Puraskar vijeta Line Ban", upon which each prize winner will pass his rifle into the left hand of the person standing next to him. On a second beat, all prize winners will march to form a line on both sides of the parade Commander, facing the Saluting Base, and dress up on the parade Commander's word of command, "Vijeta, Saj Ja".

On his next command, "Vijeta, Madhye Se Tej Chal" all prize winners (including the parade Commander himself) will advance. On reaching the marked line in front of the Saluting Base, and dress up on the Parade Commander will bring them to halt and give the following further commands: —

"Vijeta, Saj Ja"
"Puraskar Vijeta, Salute"
"Vijeta, Vishram"

The names of the prize winners will then be called out, upon which each of them will take a step forward and proceed to the Saluting Base, salute the VIP, receive the prize/trophy, again salute, turn to the left, march up a few paces to the side of the Saluting Base, hand over the prize/trophy to the official detailed for the purpose, and return to his original place in the line of prize winners.

Once all the prizes have been distributed, the Parade Commander will take the prize winners back, giving the following words of command:—

"Puraskar Vijeta, Savdhan"
"Vijeta, Salute"
"Vijeta, Piche Mur"
"Vijeta, Madhye Se Tej Chal"

On their reaching near the parade and in line with the original position of the Parade Commander, the Parade commander will give them the word of command, "Vijeta, Tham" on which they will come to halt. On the word of command, "Puraskar vijeta, Jagah Lo", all the prize winners would move forward to their respective places' in the Parade, the Parade Commander staying behind. A drum beat will then be sounded, on which all of them will take back their rifles. One-third-drum beat, they will come to stand-at-ease position.

(iii) The VIP will now deliver his address.

SECTION 9

153. Peeling off

- (i) Once the VIP's address is over, the Parade commander will give the following words of command.

'Tarade, Savdhan" "Commanders, Nikal Kirch"

- (ii) After the Parade has come to attention and the platoon commanders have drawn their swords, the Parade commander will advance to the Saluting Base and seek permission of the VIP for peeling off in the following words:

"Shriman, ('Mahodayaa' in the case of a lady VIP), Deekshant Parade Ko Nishkraman Karne Kee Agyaa Pradann Karen"

- (iii) The Parade commander, after obtaining permission for peeling off, will return to his position in front of the parade and give the words of command:

"Deekshant Parade, Kandhe Shastr"

"Parade, Dahine Baen Mur" the following words of

"Parade Nishkraman Ke liye, Dahine Baen Se Dhire Chal"

Upon these commands, the parade turns inside and the cadets start stepping out in columns of threes, from platoon on left as well as right side of the parade, abreast with each other, towards and on either side of the Saluting Base, in slow march. Every next, six cadets will follow the previous six at a distance of 8 paces.

The Parade and platoon Commanders and the right guides will step out in slow march along with the files and form up in the center waiting for their turn for peeling off.

As each row of six cadets reaches the mark point near the Saluting base, they will split into two rows of three each one moving towards the right and the other towards the left of the Saluting base. On approaching the VIP, they will pay compliments by offering the butt salute. After moving 8 paces, they will cut off the salute and after crossing the marked line they will break into quick march and proceed to the armory to deposit their rifles.

The right guides and the platoon commanders followed by the Parade Commander will start marching after the last row of cadets. As soon as the Parade Commander has crossed the VIP, the riding section and the band will march off through the fort wall gate. The gate will then be shut.

SECTION. 10

154. Special Notes

- (i) The procedure described in the chapter requires formation of parade in platoon. In case, the number of trainees is very large and it is desired, that the formation of parade should be in companies, march past will be done by the procedure given in section-14 of Chapter XVI.

- (ii) The passing out Parade is an occasion marking culmination of the training of the trainees. So the Parade has a little role for the Unit Adjutant and Unit SM Similarly there is little role for parade 2/IC. However, where it is desired, that they should be taken into parade according to the traditions of the unit/organisation/institution, permission of the concerned Director General of Police should be taken. Then their position in the parade will be as in Appendix 'A' of Chapter XVI.
- (iii) The Words of commands regarding Arms Drill pertain to Arms Drill with .303 Rifles. In the units where trainees have only SLrs.the commands regarding "Kandhe Shastr" will be omitted and march past will be in "Bagal Shastr".
- (iv) If cheers are to be given to the VVIP/VIP at the parade, the procedure contained in Section 3 of Chapter XIX. will be followed.

CHAPTER XXI

Colour Presentation Parade (Alankaran Parade)

This chapter is divided into two parts. Part I includes information regarding Colour and basic drill movements associated with it such as Dressing, Casing, uncasing etc. part-II contains the procedure for the ceremony of presentation of colours.

Part I

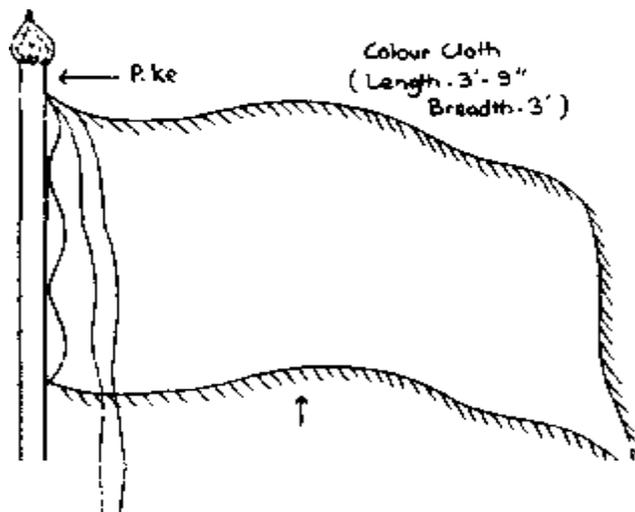
Section 1

155. Definition of Colour, its parts and their measurements

Colour is ensign or flag carried by Armed Units and Formations. It is a mark of their bravery and courage. The colour is also called Standard.

Parts of Colour:

- (i) Colour consists of pike and cloth. (Figure 1 below)
- (ii) Pike's length including the pike head is 8' 7,,.
- (iii) *The size of Color's Cloth:*
 - (a) Length -3' 9, (Three feet Nine inches)
 - (b) Breadth -3' (Feet)
 - (c) Frill -2, (Two inches)
 - (d) Chord -4' 6, (Four Feet Six inches)



Section 2

156. Carry Belt and its Dressing

(i) Carry Belt: It is used to carry the Colour. It has a socket and a strap, 'battle of Honour' is written on its both sides.

(ii) Dressing of carry belt: It is dressed like a crossbelt from the right shoulder. It also depends on the customs of a unit, but the Ensign Officer's decoration and medals should be visible. Socket should be always at the center of the body.

Section 3

157. Dressing of Colour

Method: Hold the Colour between right hand's thumb and fingers. Bottom of the pike should be a bit forward from the top and towards the right. Holding the top part, press it with the help of thumbs so that the Tarsal is on the outside. For the second fold of the double layer, 6, of cloth should be left and holding the double layer's upper cloth, press it under left thumb. For the last fold, cloth should be sized so that "Battle of Honor" is visible, fold the Colour from lower to upper side with right hand's length.

Section 4

158. Casing and Uncasing the Colour

(i) The occasions of uncasing the Colour:

- (a) Ceremonial parade;
- (b) Passing out Parade (POP);
- (c) Presentation of Guard of Honor;
- (d) At any main occasion of the unit,

(ii) Uncasing:

After lifting the Color, the Ensign Officer stands in attention position, with Senior NCO 3 paces to his front. Ensign Officer bends the colour with both his hands to the side of NCO. The NCO also handles the Colour with both hands, pressing the pike under right elbow the Ensign officer opens the case from inside. The NCO puts the case on his left shoulder after pulling it slowly. The Ensign Officer lifts the Colour in attention position, the NCO salutes the Colour, turns right and goes away.

(iii) Casing:

Whenever the Colour is kept in quarter guard or officers, mess it must be cases. If possible it should be kept in a wooden box of 9' by length and 3' by breadth with a glass lid. The colour should be kept in the box in a way so that there is no crease. While casing the Ensign Officer and NCO

both stand in attention position. The Colour is with the English Officer. To start casing, the NCO salutes the color. Then the Ensign Officer bends the Color and the NCO takes hold of the head of pike. Thereupon the Ensign Officer puts his left leg forward and NCO his right leg. After this the NCO puts the case on his right shoulder. Ensign Officer holds the pike with left hand the then grasps the lower corner of Color and joins it with the pike from left side by pressing with thumbs and fingers. The folded Colour is rolled above the pike from left to right. Tarsal is rolled properly above the Colour so that it wouldn't open. Ensign Officer controls both the pike and colour and NCO mounts the case on it. Ensign Officer helps him to mount. After the case has been mounted NCO keeps the cased Colour properly.

Section 5

159. Uthao Nishan and Bazu Nishan

(i) Need

Ensign officer must know the drill of 'Uthao Nishan' and 'Bazu Nishan' before holding and lifting the Colour.

(ii) Uthao Nishan;

Description of activity by counting

- (a) On word of command "Ginti Se Colour Drill Uthao Nishan-Ek;" lift the colour with right hand and bring it in front of the body. In this way right hand's elbow should join with pike. Hold the bottom of pike with left hand and put it inside the socket.
- (b) Points to see in this position: Colour grasped with right hand at 90oangle, elbow joined with pike and left hand on the socket joined with the body.
- (c) Squad-2 on the word of command "Squad-2, bring the left hand of left side quickly and bring right hand in front of your mouth, so that the elbow is parallel to the ground.
- (d) Points to see in this position: - Right hand before lips and fingers gripped inwards and thumb outwards; right forearm from elbow to wrist parallel to ground; rest as in attention position.

(iii) Bazu-Nishan

(a) Description of activities by counting;

The word of command is received from 'Uthao Nishan' - Ginti Se Bazu Nishan Ek "lift the color up to that height such that bottom of pike separates from the socket. Join the right elbow with pike and bring the left hand on the pike so that bottom of pike is helped to come out.

- (b) **Points to see in this position:** - As in Uthao Nishan position with any one difference *i.e.* bottom of the pike is separated from the socket.
- (c) **Squad -2** On the word of command "Squad-2" bring the Colour

- with right hand to right side and hold the Colour from the belt's line so that the pike should be joined with shoulder. Bottom of the pike should be above the ground and on the right side of the right boot's toe line.
- (d) Points to see in this position: Bottom of the pike half (1/2) inch above the ground and right hand holding the pike; left hand grasping the colour on belt line; rest of the position is like attention position.
- (e) **Squad 3:** On this word of command bring left hand on left side quickly in attention position.

SECTION 6

160. Uthao Nishan to Kandhe Nishan and Kandhe Nishan to Uthao Nishan

- (i) **Necessity of Kandhe Nishan** - It is the method of carrying the Colour from one place to another.
- (ii) **Description of Activities by Counting:**
- (a) The word of command is received from the Uthao Nishan position -"Ginti Se Colour Drill Kandhe Nishan Ek", lift the Colour with right hand so that the bottom of the pike come before the socket.
- (b) Points to see in this position are like the first motion of Bazu Nishan.
- (c) **Squad 2:** On the word of command "Squad 2" bring the" left hand in attention position and the colour to the shoulder. Right elbow should touch the body.
- (d) **Points to see in this position** — Right elbow joined with right side of the body; the pike gripped with right hand on the shoulder and at the angle of 45° it is covered with colour from the head of the pike to right hand's grip.

SECTION 7

161. Let Fly, Holding and Dipping of the Colour

- (i) **Let Fly:** In this the colour is waived according to procedure given below and it is done when the word of command 'Salami Shastr' is given.
- (ii) **Description of Activity**
- On the word of command "Let Fly" move the right hand along with the pike almost about 6 inches and let free the Colour from the hand. When Colour is free bring the right hand again to the former position. The movement is done with the third movement of Salami Shashtra. Right hand should not be removed from the pike.
- (iii) **Points to see in this position:** It is like Uthao Nishan but the colour is flying.
- (iv) **Holding the Colour**
- This- activity is done on the command of Bazu Shashtra. On this command, hold the Colour with left hand and bring it on the left side. On

the word of command of Bazu Shastr, Colour is to be brought to Bazu Nishan accordingly. If the VIP has to inspect after receiving the salute then the Colour is kept in carry position and* Ensign Officer coordinates his movements with words of command of Arms Drill.

(v) Occasions to dip the Colour;

(a) President's Colour:

President's Colour is dipped for the

- (i) President
- (ii) Governor in the State

President Colour is dipped only when National Salute is being given.

(b) Regimental Colour

It is dipped for the following: —

- (i) President
- (ii) Vice President
- (iii) Governor
- (iv) Prime Minister
- (v) Union Home Minister
- (vi) Field Marshal
- (vii) Chief Minister in his State.
- (viii) Chief of Army Staff, Air Chief Marshal, Chief of Naval Staff with permission from Union Home Ministry.
- (ix) Director General of Police with permission.

(i) Description of activity by counting

Word of command is received from the carry position" Ginti Se Colour Drill Jhukao Nishan EK", join right elbow with the pike.

- (ii) **Squad 2:** — On the word of command 'Squad 2', lift the Colour at 45° on left or right depending upon the direction of the wind so that the colour will fly completely in the air.

SECTION 8

162. Color party, Escort and Priests

- (i) Colour will be carried in the above-described manner, by the Ensign Officer of the rank of Dy SP/ASP. The escort of the Colour party will consist of 3 specially selected NCOs (in a Battalion the senior most NCO who is Battalion Havildar Major and two other senior NCOs should form the escort).
- (ii) The entire colour party will take its position, in the center of the parade.

- (iii) In addition, two specially selected NCOs will stay with the Colour party with Cased Colours.
- (iv) If there are two Colours i.e. President's colour and Regimental Colour, there will be two Ensign Officers. President's colours should always be on the right and the officer carrying the colour will be senior of the two and commander of the party.
- (v) **Priests:** Priests or Religious teachers (RTs) should be specially selected for the parade. They should be included in the rehearsals.
- (vi) Before the start of the parade, the RTs should take post behind the Saluting Base, a few paces towards the right.



Part II

Section 1

163. General Instructions

Colour is presented to a force/unit as recognition of the services rendered by it. It is a mark of the spirit of dedication, bravery and courage exhibited by the unit. Colour Presentation Parade, therefore is a highly ceremonial occasion. Careful preparation should be done under supervision at all levels to ensure a high standard of the parade. Procedure regarding General Arrangements, Parade Ground, Unit Organisation, Receiving the Inspecting officer, Inspection, March Past, Post of Officers and Advancing in Review order is given in Chapter XVI of this Manual and will be followed. Officers will follow the special instructions regarding ceremonial parade given in section 8 of the same chapter. Officers are therefore advised to thoroughly study Chapter XVI along with this chapter.

Section 2

164. VVIPs to present the Colour

Colour Presentation is a singular occasion marking the recognition of the achievements of the Unit. It is occasion, which will be engraved in the memory of the members of unit. Therefore the Heads of Forces should ensure that color is presented to a force/ unit by a VVIP only)

For President's Colour

President's Colour to a police force (CPO/State Police) will be presented by one of the following VVIPs:

- (a) President
- (b) Prime Minister
- (c) Union Minister of Home Affairs.

For Regimental Colour

Regimental Colour to a police formation (Battalion/PTC) will be presented by one of the following: -

- (a) Governor
- (b) Chief Minister of the State
- (c) State Minister of Home Affairs

Section 3

165. Strength of Parade)

Colour Presentation Parade (Alankaran Parade) will consist of the following:

(i) For President's Colour

- (a) Parade Commander (Commandant/SP.)
- (b) Parade Second-in-Command (Addl.SP)
- (c) Parade Adjutant
- (d) Officers - 4 (Company Commanders)
- (e) Subedar Major - 1
- (f) SOs - 12
- (g) Other Ranks - 4 Coys of 75 Other Ranks each
- (h) Ensign Officer - 1
- (i) Escorts to the Colour 3 + 2
- (j) Bands - Two Bands (Brass&Pipe mixed)
- (k) Mounted Squad - As per availability.

Instructions regarding Ensign Officer and Escorts are already discussed in section 8 of Part I of this Chapter.

(ii) For Regimental Colour

- (a) Parade Commander (Dy. Comdt.)
- (b) Parade 2/IC (Dy. SP)
- (c) Parade SM
- (d) Ensign Officer-1
- (e) Escorts to the color 3+2
- (f) SOs: as per the strength of the other ranks.
- (g) Other Ranks: at least two coys.
- (h) Band: One/two as per availability
- (i) Mounted Squad: as per availability.

Section 4

166. Formation of parade

- (i) Thirty minutes before the scheduled commencement of the program, the Alankaran Parade will form up behind the Fort Wall, Coy-wise, rifles in "Bazu Shastr" (Order Arms) position with bayonets fixed. Two Coys will take position on the right side of the 'Fort Gate', coy number 1 being nearest to the gate and other coy (Coy number 2) to its

right. The last coy (Coy number 4) will be near the gate on left and coy number 3 will be to its further left. The Riding Squad will be behind the parade followed by the Band at the rear, in the center. Buglars and lancers will also position behind the fort wall.

- (ii) Fort-gate is opened by two gate-keepers 20 minutes before the commencement of the parade. Two buglars enter the parade ground from the sides of the center wall and march up to the inspection line (for description of inspection line, passing line etc. please see Section 2 of chapter XVI) and will sound Markers Call. The buglars turn and march back to the rear of the fort wall. The markers will take their positions on the inspection line.

The buglars and lancers take up their respective positions on the top of the fort wall and on the sides of the parade ground.

The buglars sound Fall in Call (Advance Call) 3 minutes, after the Marker's Call.

- (iii) The parade SM will now bring the parade to "Savdhan" and "Khandhe Shastr" positions, and march it to the inspection line, giving the command "Parade Dahine Baen Se Tej Chal". On crossing the gate, the right side coys. (Nos. 1,2) will proceed toward the right of the wall; the left side ones (Nos. 3,4) marching towards the left of the wall. On reaching the markers, the platoons will mark time. On a drum beat, given after all the platoons have reached their respective positions on the inspection line, the parade will halt. The parade SM will give the following commands in succession: —

"Parade, Age Barhega Dahine Baen Mur",

"Parade, Bazu Shastr",

"Parade Khuli Line Chair",

"Parade Madhye Saj".

"Parade Vishram".

The riding section will form up on the left. The band will form up 8 paces behind the inspection line in the centre.

- (iv) Parade Adjutant marches from the dais side towardsd the parade. On seeing the parade adjutant, Parade Sub. Major brings the parade to 'Savdhan' and hands over the parade to the Parade Adj t. and turns about and takes his position
- (v) Parade Adj t. turns about, faces the dais and brings the parade to " Vishram."
- (vi) Parade Adj t brings the Parade to 'Savdhan' on seeing the Parade 2/IC approaching form the dais end.
- (vii) Parade Adj t hands over the parade to the Parade 2/IC turns about and takes his position.
- (viii) Parade 2/IC turns about and faces the dais.

(ix) **Officers Call:** Buglars sound "Officers Call" and on this Officers march on the parade ground from the center, take right and left turn and take up positions in front of their respective coys at a time and turn left/ right to face the dais. This is done on drum beat. As the officers have taken their places, parade 2/IC will give command Officers, Sos Kirch, Nikalenge, Nikal Kirch". Thereupon all officers and Sos on parade will draw swords except Ensign Officer and Band Master, After this Parade 2/ 1C brings Parade to 'Vishram' and parade awaits arrival of the Parade Commander.

(x) On the arrival of the Parade Commander Parade 2/IC brings the Parade to 'Savdhan' and Kandhe Shastr. Then he gives the command—

"Parade Salami Degi Salami Shastra".

On this the parade salutes the Parade Commander (Band will not play) and Parade 2/IC gives the commands of "Parade Kandhe Shastr" and "Parade Bazu Shastr," marches up to the dais and hands over the parade to the Parade Commander.

(xi) The Parade Commander and Parade 2/IC move upto their respective positions and turn about.

(xii) Parade Commander should give sufficient start to the 2/IC before he leaves his post so that both reach their post simultaneously.

(xiii) The Parade Commander brings the Parade to 'Vishram' and awaits arrival of the DGP.

N.B. :-

1. Being a major parade, it is desired that it should be held where a permanent fort is available. These forts have ramparts. The buglars should be stationed on the ramparts or any other convenient places if the wall has no ramparts.
2. If the state/unit does not have the permanent fort, then a temporary fort of canvass cloth should be made. This will lend colour and pageant to the ceremony.
3. Mounted squad and lancers will be included in the parade depending upon the availability.
4. To save time, the procedure can be modified in which Parade 2/IC, Coy. Commanders, Parade Adjutant, and Parade SM all fall behind the fort wall. Parade 2 1C brings the parade-to-parade ground hands over to the Parade Commander.

Section 5

167. Arrival of Cased Colours:

After the parade commander has taken his position, he orders the parade to "Kandhe Shastr" and to the Colour party to bring the Cased Colours to the parade ground by the following commands: —

- (a) Prade Kandhe Shastr"
- (b) Nishan Toli Parade Par"

[On this word of command Nishan Toli (Colour Party) alongwith the Commanders will march into take position (See appendix 'A' of Chapter XVI)]

- (c) "Parade Bazu shastr" (after the colour party taken its position)
- (d) "Parade Vishram"

Section 6

168. Presenting Compliments to the DGP

The Director General of Police will arrive 10 minutes before the commencement of the programme. The moment his arrival is sighted, the parade commander will bring the parade to 'Savdhan', and 'Kandhe Shastr, position. Immediately after the DGP has taken position at the Saluting Base, the parade commander will give the command "Parade General Salute, Salami Shastr".

The Band will play the tune 'General Salute' at the conclusion of which the parade commander will give the following commands successively:

- "Parade Kandhe Shastr"
- "Parade Kandhe Shastr"
- "Parade Kandhe Shastr"

After taking salute, the DGP will proceed to the alighting point to receive the VVIP invited to present the colours and wait for his arrival.

N.B. In addition to DGP of the Organisation/State police force, general salute may be given to the Inspector General & Additional Director General, who have been involved in the supervision/preparation of the parade. This should be given before the arrival of DGP.

Section 7

169. Arrival of WIP/VIP

As soon as the VIP/VVIP is sighted, the buglars will sound "Fanfare". The parade commander will immediately give the command:" Alankaran Parade Savdhan", followed by "Parade Kandhe Shastr".

As soon as the VVIP, escorted by the DGP, takes up his position on the saluting base, the parade will present arms to him, the parade commander giving the following words of command:

"Parade, General salute, Salami shastr"

The Band will play the tune "General Salute" and the parade will stay in that position till the tune is over. (If the VVIP is the President of India or a Governor, the "Rashtriya Salute" will be given and the Band will play National Anthem).

The parade commander will, thereafter, bring the parade to "Kandhe Shastr" and "Bazu Shastr" positions.

N.B. Regarding Rashtriya Salute and Playing of National Anthem instructions contained in Section 7 and Section g of Chapter XVIir (Chapter on Guard of Honour) will be followed

SECTION 8

170. REVIEW OF THE PARADE BY THE VVIP

The moment the parade comes to "Bazu Shastr" position, the parade commander will march towards Saluting Base, halt, pay compliment of WIP and report: —

"Shriman (Mahodayaa if the VVIP is a lady)

Alankaran Parade Aapke Nirikshan Ke Liye Hazir Hai"

Meanwhile, the inspection jeep (if one is planned to be used), stationed close at hand will reach the saluting base. The VVIP will stand in the front portion of the jeep, and the DGP and the parade commander in the rear portion with the former on the right and the latter on his left side. The jeep will proceed to the right of the parade and pass through the front rank of the parade from right to left (in case a jeep is not intended to be used, the VVIP will be escorted on foot to the inspection line with the DGP on his right and the parade commander on the left, both moving one step behind the VVIP)

As soon as the VVIP (whether on the inspection jeep or one foot) passes the right guide of the first platoon, the band will start playing one of the slow march tunes and will continue to play the same till the review of the parade by the VVIP is over. (If the VVIP is on foot, the parade commander and the DGP will move in slow march during the review).

After VVIP's return to the saluting base, parade commander salutes him, returns to his position and turns about.

N.B: --As colour presentation is a major ceremonial occasion and parade is also quite big, it is desirable that an inspection jeep should be arranged.

Section 9

171. PARADE TROOPS

(i) This is done when the organisation is having old colour and is being replaced by a New Colour. There will be two Ensign Officers. Senior Ensign Officer will hand over the old colour to the Jr. Ensign Officer, who will march off the parade ground and Senior Ensign Office will stay back and receive the New Colours.

(ii) In this, the parade commander will give the command

‘Parade Troop’

On the command troop, the band and drums will move across the parade ground from the right to left playing a slow troop. They will count march 10 paces from the old colour and will halt when the drum major is in the centre of the parade ground. Now both escort parties come on parade ground.

(iii) When the escort parties are moving parade commander orders "General Salute" to the "Old Colour" by giving the following commands:

- (a) "Parade Kandhe Shastra"
- (b) "Parade General Salute Salami Shastra",
Escort Party will also present arms at the same time.)
- (c) "Parade Kandhe Shastra"
- (d) "Parade Bazu Shastra"

(iv) After this, the parade commander gives the command "Ensign officer Jagah Lo".

On this word of command, Ensign Officers march to the centre line in front of parade comdr. Senior Ensign officer hands over the old colour to Jr. Ensign officer. After handing and taking over, both officers join their respective escorts and escort having old colour leaves the parade ground on the command of Jr. Ensign Officer.

(v) As the escort with the old colour is leaving the parade ground, parade again will give "General Salute" to the old colour. Parade Commander gives the required commands. Simultaneously, the senior ensign officer, will take his original place in the parade alongwith the New Cased Colours.

Section 10

172. Formation of Hollow Square

1. To form the hollow square, the parade commander gives the following commands:

(a) "Parade Khali Varg Banaegi Bazu Dal Adha Dahine Baen Mur". (on this only the front ranks of flanking coys will turn half left and half right).

(b) "Bazu Dal Dahine Baen Se Tej Chal". (On this, the band will play and the flanking Coys march to form the hollow square. Inner coys remain in position. Second-in Command coy commanders and adjutant also take their positions.)

(c) "Bazu Dal Tham" (When the flanking companies have reached at their places).

- (d) "Bazu Dal Madhye Saj" (The dressing takes place to the roll of drums)
- (e) "Bazu Dal Samne Dekh" (Flanking coys look to the front)
- (f) After this parade commander brings the parade to 'vishram'.

Section 11

173. Piling of Drums and Consecration of the Colour

- (i) Parade commander gives the word of command "Drummers Drum Lagao" and on this 10 side drummers and one base drummer move forward in quick time from the centre-rear of the parade. They will move to the centre of the parade ground opposite the saluting dais, halt on either side of the position marked for piling of the drums and face inwards. The drums will then be piled in the place already marked.
- (ii) While the drummers march off to the accompaniment of the drum beat the Parade 2 IC will move forward and position himself on the right side at a distance of seven paces from the file of drums between the drums and the parade.
- (iii) Now the Parade commander gives words of command "Nishan Jagah lo", and thereupon the NCO carrying the cased colour will move forward from the centre of the parade and halt 10 paces from the drums. The Parade 2-IC will uncase the colour (he will not salute) and hand over the case to the NCO. The 2-IC will place the colour on the drums towards the parade and then resume his position. The NCO with the case will about turn and move up in quick time inside the fort.

NOTE: -The escorts to the new colour will halt at the inspection line. Only the NCO carrying the cased colours will move forward.

- (iv) After this, parade commander gives word of command "Dharam Guru Jagah Lo". Thereupon Dharam Gurus (Religious Teachers) followed by their sewadars advance from outside the parade ground and halt on the spot on the places marked for them on the left and facing towards the drums.
- (v) After the Religious Teachers (RTs) have assumed their places, parade commander gives command. "Dharam Guru Pavitar Karvai Shuru Karo". Thereupon RTs perform consecration.
- (vi) As soon as the RTs complete the consecration, parade commander brings the parade to Savdhan and gives commnad "Ensign Officer Jagah Lo".

Only the ensign officer will move forward and halt 10 paces from the pile of drums. The escorts will remain at the inspection line.

Section 12

174. Presentation of Colour

- (i) The parade commander advances towards the saluting dais in order to request the VVIP/VIP "to present the colour. After paying compliments to VVIP/VIP, he says "Shriman Nishan Pardan Karne Ke Lie Nivedan Hai"

The VVIP/VIP accompanied by the DGP and parade commander will now come down from the dais and move forward towards the centre of parade ground.

- (ii) The VVIP/VIP and DGP will move to a position in front of the drums. Parade 2-IC will move forward and pick up the standard from the drums and hand it over to the DGP who in turn will hand it over to the WIP/VIP.

The ensign officer sinking on the right knee awaits presentation of the colour. The VVIP/VIP will then present the colour. The band play "FAN FARE". The ensign officer will then rise and resume his position.

- (iii) The VVIP/VIP will then return to the dais. The religious teachers leave the parade ground and take position behind the saluting dais where they remain till the end of the parade.
- (iv) The parade commander returns to his original position. The ensign officer remains at the same spot.
- (v) Parade commander now brings the parade to 'Vishram' to mark that the ceremony is over. After a brief pause, he again brings the parade to 'Savdhan'.

Section 13

175. Re-Formation of Parade on the Inspection Line:--

- (i) For reforming the parade on the inspection line, the Parade commander gives following words of commands in succession—

- | | |
|---|---|
| (a) "Bazu Dal Pichhe Mur" | (The flanking coys do an about turn) |
| (b) "Parade line Par Banaegi Bazu Dal Adha Dahine Baen Mur" | (The flanking Coys will turn half right and half left) |
| (c) "Bazu Dal Dahine Aur Baen se Tej Chal" | (The flanking Coys step out in quick time and reform on the inspection line.) |
| (d) "Bazu Dal Tham" | (The flanking coys will come to halt) |
| (e) "Bazu Coy Age Barhega Pichhe Mur" | (The flanking coys turn about and fe the saluting dais) |

- (f) "Parade Madhye Saj" (The parade dresses from the centre to the roll of drums)

Now the parade has reformed at the inspection line except that the drums are still lying at the centre of the parade ground.

- (ii) The parade commander brings the parade to 'Vishram' and gives the command, "Drummers Drum Uthao".

On this drummers come in line, pick up their drums and join the band. They play their drums while marching.

After the drummers have joined the band, parade commander brings the parade to Savdhan. The escorts to the new colours now move up and join the ensign officer.

- (iii) The parade commander now gives the command—

"Nishan Sthan Lo"

On this word of command, the ensign officer comes to the inspection line in 'Dhire Chaf' for taking up position facing the dais.

While the ensign officer is bringing the colour to the inspection line, the parade commander will give the word of command, "Parade, Nishan Ko Sanman Degi General Salute, Salami Shastr" and the parade pays compliments to the new colour.

Section 14

176. Ceremonial March Past

- (i) After this parade will do ceremonial march past. The parade will march past twice first in slow time and then in quick time.

The procedure for march past by the platoons has been described in Section 17 and Section 16 of Chapter XVI (Chapter on Ceremonial Drill). The position of the officers, men and colours will be as per Appendix-F of the same chapter. The procedure for this type of march past has also been described in detail in section 7* of chapter XX (Chapter on Passing Out Parade).

- (ii) If the march past is to be done by companies, the same procedure will be followed i.e., first in slow time and then in quick time. March past by coys has been discussed in section 14 of Chapter XVI. The position of officers, men and colours will be as per Appendix-D of the same chapter. However, a brief summary of the events and words of command in this case is given below:

- (a) The parade commander gives the following commands—**

"Parade Nikat Line Chal"

"Parade Kandhe Shastr"

"Parade Tinon Teen Ke Column Mein Dahine chalega, Dahine Mur"

"Parade Bazu Se Tej Chal"

"Parade Do Bar Disha Badal Baen Ghoom"

(b) Formation in close column—

As the parade approaches march past line in front and to the left of saluting base, parade commander orders the parade to form in close column. He will give the following command:

"Parade Baen Disha Tham Kar, Number Ek Par Companio Ka Nikat Column Banaa"

Number one Coy will come to halt at the command of coy. Commander and turn left. Other coys will follow at the marked places at the command of their respective commanders. Colour party will take position on command of ensign officer.

After the parade has halted, he gives the following words of commands in succession—

"Parade Bazu Shastra"

"Parade Dahine Saj"

"Parade Samne Dekh" (After the dressing is over)

- (ii) **March past:** After dressing, the parade commander gives command, "Parade Dahine Se, Bari Bari Companio Ke Column Me, Dhire Aur Tej Chal Mein, Munch Se Guzrengi Fasla 20 Kadam, Number Ek Coy Age"

After this, each individual coy commander gives the following words of command:

(a) "Number.....Coy age Barhegi, Dahine Se Dhire Chal"

(b) "Number.....Coy Khuli LINE CHAL" (At point 'B'; coy will open order and continue marching). *

(c) "Number.....Coy Dahine Dekh" (At point 'C' coys will turn 'Eyes Right')

(d) "Number.....Coy Samne Dekh" (At point 'D' the coys will do 'Eyes front')

(e) "Number.....Coy Nikat Line Chal" (The coys will close order and continue marching)

(f) On approaching right corner, the parade commander (Point 'F') will give the command—"Parade Tham Kar, Coys Ka Nikat Column Banaa". After this, individual coy commanders will bring their coys to halt on the command "No....Coy Tham"

(g) After the parade has halted parade commander will command the parade to turn right by giving the word of command,

* For description of various landmarks (such as Point 'A', Point 'B' etc.) and other details of Inspection Ground, please see section 2 of Chapter XVI.

"Parade, Dahine Se Tinon Teen Ke Column Mein Age Barh, Parade Dahine Mur".

- (h) After the parade has turned right, each individual coy commander will give the command, "Number....Coy Baen Se Baen Ghoom, Tej Chal" on this coys will follow, one by one, on command of their respective coy comdrs.
- (i) The parade will march past in quick march this time but without coming to halt any where and in close column. All coys will pay compliments as was done in slow march near the saluting base.
- (j) Once the parade reaches its original position on inspection line the individual coy commanders will bring their coys to halt on the command, "No....Coy Tham"

After the parade nas come to the halt, parade commanders gives the following words of command:

"Parade Age Bareghi Baen Mur"

"Parade Bazu Shastr"

"Parade Madhye Saj" (Parade will dress up on the drum rolls).

N.B. Colour will be dipped in front of the saluting base if required as per Section 7 of Part-I of this chapter.

Section 15

177. Advance in Review Order, and Speech by WIP

Now the parade will advance in review order as per procedure given in Section 18 of Chapter XVI. After advancing the parade will pay compliments to WIP/VIP and come to Vishram. Now VVIP/VIP will deliver the speech. After the speech is over, cheers may be given to VVIP/VIP immediately as per the procedure contained in Section 2 of Chapter XIX.

Section 16

178. Return of Colours

After the Above, Parade Commander will give the commands—

"Parade Savdhan"

"Parade Kandhe Shastr"

"Nishan Jagah Lo"

On the last command, the colour party will march and forms at left

of the Saluting Base. It performs this activity on the command of Ensign officer on the words of command—

(a) "Nishan Toli Kandhe Shastr"

(b) "Nishan Toli, Madhye Se Tej Chal"

After the colour party has formed to the left of the saluting base, parade commander gives the command, "Nishan Kooch Kar".

Now this colour party leaves the parade ground and simultaneously parade pays compliments to the colour on the word of command—

"Parade Nishan Ko Sanman Degi General Salute, Salami Shastr".

The parade will remain Salami Shastra position till colour party leaves the ground. Band will play general salute.

Section 17

179. HANDING OVER THE PARADE

(i) After the colours have left the ground, the parade commander gives following commands—

(a) "Parade Kandhe Shastr"

(b) "Parade Bazu Shastr"

(c) "Officers, Sos Kirch Wapas Kareng, Wapas Kirch" (All officers and Sos will return their swords)

(d) "Officers Mere Baen Line Ban, Sub. Maj. Parade Kooch Ke Lie Sthan Lo"

(On this command, all officers will form up on the left of the parade commander. Sub-Major will take position to march off the parade)

(e) "Officers Dahine Se Tej Chal"

(f) "Officers Tham" (Officers will come to halt in front of the dais for introduction to the VIP/VVIP).

(g) "Officers Salute" (All officers will salute the VIP/VVIP.)

(ii) After saluting the officers are introduced to the VVIP/VIP who shakes hands with them. The officers reforms in front of the saluting base and parade commander give the following commands—

"Officers Salute" (All officers will salute the VVIP/VIP)

"Officers Line Tor" (Officers will disperse.)

(iii) After the officers have dispersed, Subedar Major marches off the parade by giving following commands—

"Parade Kandhe, Shastra"

"Parade Ander Ko Mur"

(On this command, all coys will turn inward).

"Parade Dahine Bayen Ghooni Tej Chal"

"All coys will go behind the fort wall. Band will also take coomtel march and go behind the fort wall. Fort gate will be closed."

CHAPTER XXII

FAREWELL PARADE

(VIDAI PARADE)

180. Introduction

(i) Farewell is accorded to senior police officers on the occasion of their retirement and transfer by holding Farewell Parades.

(ii) Farewell Parade is held as a mark of recognition of the services rendered by the Outgoing Officer and his association with the force/unit.

(iii) As the officer is going on retirement/transfer and the new incumbent is coming to replace him, it is desired that the new incumbent should also be present at the parade, if possible.

Section—1

181. General Instructions

Farewell parade is a ceremonial occasion and therefore, the procedure regarding General Arrangements, Parade Ground, Unit Organisation, Receiving of Inspecting Officer, Inspection, March Past, Post of Officers and advancing in review order as given in chapter XVI will be followed. Officers will follow the special instructions regarding Ceremonial Parade given in Section 8 of the same chapter.

Section—2

182. Strength of the Parade

The Strength of the farewell parade should be befitting.

The rank of the outgoing officer. However, it should not be ostentatious. The strength of the parade to be organised, in respect of the officers of different ranks should be as under. —

(It should not exceed to prescribed strength in any case): -

| S. No. | Rank of Out-going Officer | Rank of No. Parade Commander | Rank of the Parade 2/IC | Strength of the Parade |
|--------|---------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| 1 | DGP | ADDL. SP | Dy SP | 3 Coys. Mounted squad if available Motorised column like Signals, Commn. vechs. etc., if available. |
| 2 | Addl. DG | -do- | -do- | 2-3 coys. Mounted squad if available. |
| 3 | IG | ASP/Dy SP | Inspt | 2 coys. Mounted squad if available. |
| 4 | DIG | -do- | -do- | 5 platoons. Mounted squad if available. |
| 5 | SSP/SP/Comdt. | -do- | -do- | 4 Platoons Mounted squad if available |

(ii) For the farwell of DGP, Addl. DGP, and IGP, two bands should be requisitioned, with the minimum strength of 40 band pieces for DGP and Addl DGP and 30 for IGP. For DIG and SP only one band should be organised.

(iii) Strength of buglars may be as follows—

| Rank | Number of buglars |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| (a) DGP/Addl. DGP | 8-12 |
| (b) IG | 6 |
| (c) DIG | 4 |
| (d) SSP/SP/Comdt. | 2 |

(iv) 8 to 12 lancers may also be positioned on either side of the fort wall for the farewell parade of DGP and Addl DGP, if available.

Section—3

183. Formation of parade

(i) Twenty minutes before the scheduled commencement of the programme, the "farwell parade" will form up behind the Fort wall (if fort is available) or outside the parade ground, platoon wise, rifles in "Bazu shasrra" (order arms) position with bayonets fixed. Half of the number of platoons will take position on the right side of the 'Fort Gate' (or entry point into parade ground), platoon number 1 being nearest to the gate and other platoons to its right in the ascending order of their serial numbers. The remaining half will stand on the left of the gate, the serially last platoons being near the gate and the others to its left in the descending

order of their serial number. Thus, if there are six platoons participating in the parade, platoons numbers 1,2,3, will stand on, the right of the 'Fort Gate' and platoon numbers 6,5,4 to its left, in that order. With five platoons in the parade, platoons numbers 1,2,3, will stand on the right of the gate and platoon numbers 5,4 on its left.

The Parade 2/IC will take position in front. The swords of the Parade 2/IC and Platoon Commanders will be in "Carry" position. The Riding Section, if available, will be behind the parade followed by the band at the rear, in the centre. Buglers and Lancers will also position behind the fort wall.

(ii) Fort-gate is opened by two gate-keepers 15 minutes before the commencement of the Parade. Two buglers enter the parade ground from the sides of the centre wall and march upto the inspection line and will sound Markers Call The buglers turn and march back to the rear of the fort wall The Markers will take their positions on the inspection line.

The baglers and lancets also take up their respective positions on the top of the fort wall and on the sides of the parade ground.

(iii) The buglers sound Fall in Call (Advance Call) 3 minutes after the Markers Call. There upon the Parade 2/IC will bring the parade to "Savdhan" and "Kandha Shastra" positions, and march it to the inspection line, giving the command "Parade Dahine Baen Se Tej Chal". On crossing the gate, the right of the wall; the left side ones (Nos. 6,5,4) marching towards the left of the wall. On reaching the markers, the platoons will mark time. On a drum beat given after all the platoons have reached their respective positions on the inspection line, the parade will halt. The Parade Commander will give the following commands in succession:

"Parade, Dhine Baen Mur",

"Parade, Bazu Shastra",

"Parade Khuli Line Chal",

"Parade Madhye Saj".

The Riding Section will form up on the left. The band will form up 8 paces behind the inspection line in the centre.

(iv) On the arrival of Parade Commander. Parade 2/IC will give following commands: —

"Parade Savdhan"

"Parade Kandhe Shastra"

"Parade Salami Degi, Parade Salami Shastra"

(Band will Not play)

"Parade Kandhe Shastra"

"Parade Bazu Shastra"

Then the Parade 2/IC marches up to Parade Commander, pays compliments to him and hands over the parade to him.

- (iv) Both Parade Commander and Parade 2/IC will take their positions and Parade Commander will bring the Parade to "Vishram"

Section—4

184. Arrival of the Outgoing Officer

As soon as the Outgoing Officer is sighted, the buglers will sound "Fanfare". The Parade Commander will immediately give the Command: "Vidaegi Parade, Savdhan", followed by "Parade Kandhe Shastra".

As soon as the Outgoing Officer escorted by other Senior Officers, takes up his position on the Saluting Base, the parade will present arms to him, the Parade Commander giving the following words of command:

"Parade, General Salute, Salami Shastra"

The Band will play the tune "General Salute" and the parade will stay in that position till the tune is over.

Section—5

185. Review of the Parade by the- Outgoing Officer

The moment the parade comes to "Bazu Shastra" position, the Parade Commander will march towards Saluting Base, halt, pay compliments to Outgoing Officer and report—

"Shriman" ("Mahodaya", if the VIP is a lady) Vidai Parade Aapke Nirikshan Ke Liye Hazir Hai" Meanwhile, the inspection jeep (if one is planned to be used), stationed close at hand, will reach the Saluting Base. The Outgoing Officer will stand in the front portion of the jeep and the Parade Commander in the rear portion. The jeep will then proceed to the right of the parade and pass through the front rank of the parade from right to left (in case a jeep is not intended to be used, the Outgoing Officer will be escorted on foot to the inspection -line by the- Parade Commander who will move one step behind the Outgoing Officer and to the left). As soon as the Outgoing Officer (whether on the inspection jeep or on foot) passes the right guide of the first platoon, the band will start playing one of the slow march tunes and will continue to play the same till the review of the parade is over. (If the Outgoing Officer is on foot, the Parade Commander will move in slow march during the review).

SECTION—6

186. Ceremonial March Past

After the inspection is over and Outgoing Officer has returned to the Saluting Base, the Parade Commander will salute him and return to his position. After this the parade will do the march past. The procedure for the march past is described in Section 16 of Chapter XVI. If it is desired to do a march past it is described in Section 16 of Chapter XVI. If it is desired to do a march past in slow time before marching past in quick time, procedure given in section 17 of the chapter XVI will be followed. The procedure for march past has also been discussed in detail in Section 7 of Chapter XX (Chapter on Passing Out Parade).

Section 7

187. Advance in Review Order and Speeches

(i) Once the ceremonial March Past is over and parade has reformed on the inspection line, the parade commander will advance the parade in Review Order as per the procedure given in Section 18 of chapter XVI (Also given in Section 8 of Chapter XX (Chapter on Passing Out Parade).

(ii) When the parade halts, parade commander will order general salute to the Outgoing Officer by giving the following commands —

"Parade Kandhe Shastra"

"Parade Genera! Salute, Salami Shasrra"

"Parade Kandhe Shastr."

"Parade Bazu Shastra"

"Parade Vishram"

(iii) Now the senior-most officer of the force/unit (except the Outgoing and Incoming officers) will say a few words about the contributions of the Outgoing Officer. The speech should be short and to the point. After his own speech, he will request the Outgoing Officer to say a few words.

Section 8

188. Giving Cheers To The Outgoing Officer

After the speech of the Outgoing Officer is over. Parade Commander will bring parade to 'SAVDHAN' and cheers will be given to the Outgoing Officer as per procedure given in Section 3 of Chapter XIX.

Section 9

189. General Notes

(i) After the cheers, the Senior Officers will escort the Outgoing Officer to the mess/office as per programme. Parade commander will hand over the parade to parade 21/C who will march off the parade outside the parade ground.

(ii) If some cultural/sport show is to follow, after the speech of Outgoing Officer, Parade commander will march upto Saluting Base, pay compliments to Outgoing Officer and ask permission to march off by saying "Shriman, Parade Ko Kooch Karne Ki Aagya Pardan Karen". Having taken permission, he will again pay compliments to Outgoing Officer, return to his place and hand over the parade to parade 21/C by giving word of command, "Parade 21/C Sambhal Parade". Parade 21/C will salute the parade commander and turn about and give the following commands—

"Parade Kandhe Shastr"

"Parade Ander Ko Mur". (on this command, all platoons will turn inwards.)

"Parade Dahine Baen Ghoom Tej Chal"

All platoons will go behind fort wall. Band will also take comtel march and go behind fort wall. Fort gate will be closed.

CHAPTER XXIII

FUNERAL DRILL

Funeral Drill will be organised to honour those deceased police personnel who sacrificed their lives in line of duty. The Head of the Police Force will, however, have the discretion to permit funeral parade in the case of any other officer or man who, in his opinion, deserves that honour.

Section 1

190. Ceremony To Be Observed At A Funeral

1. *The Firing Party*— The party consisting of the one Head Constable, one Naik, one Lance Naik and twelve Constables will fire volleys at the funeral. While marching in slow time arms will be carried at the reverse and in quick time at the trail. During the march, arms may be changed but the party will not march at ease.

2. *The Bearer Party*— This consists of an officer, one Head Constable and eight bearers whose ranks will depend upon the rank or status of the deceased. The bearers will be detailed also according to the religious custom of the deceased. The Commander will see that the flag, head-dress, side-arms and wreaths are properly arranged and tied to the coffin or bier to prevent them from falling.

3. *Order of Forming Up*— The firing party will be drawn up in two ranks with sloped arms, one pace interval between files, facing the building where the body is placed. The Naik will be on the flank of the front rank towards which the procession will move. The Head Constable will give all words of command and be posted in rear of the centre. As soon as the body is brought out of building by the bearers, the Head Constable of the firing party will give the command "Salami Shastra". When the coffin or bier has been placed in the carriage and the cortege is ready to move off, he will order "*Uta Shastra,*" "*Dahine/Baen Mud*" (The Naik taking up his place two paces in front and midway between the ranks). "*Dhire Chal*".

4. The mourners in uniform, band and drummers, with drums muffled, will form up in two ranks, facing inward, with two paces interval between men and eight paces distance between ranks.

5. The firing party and the remainder of the leading portion of the procession will pass between the ranks.

The Procession will then move off in the following order: —

- (a) Escort.
- (b) Firing party.

- (c) Band and Drums.
- (d) Body on gun carriage, Pall bearers, Bearers.
- (e) Chief mourners.
- (f) The President's special representative, if applicable.
- (g) Mourners in uniform in order of seniority (the senior leading).
- (h) Mourners not in uniform.
- (i) Troops lining the route in three beginning on the inner flank when reversing arms in succession as they break into slow time,
- (j) Rear Detachment.
- (k) Mounted units forming part of the escort.
- (l) Motor cars or other vehicles unless directed by a separate route.

NOTE: — The bearers will march on either side of the gun carriage, except when pall bearers are present, in which case the pall bearers will march immediately on either side of the gun carriage and the bearers on the outer flank at two paces interval. The positions of the pall bearers will be in order of seniority alternately on either side of the coffin, the senior being in rear on the right hand side, the next senior in rear on the left hand side and so on.

If the mourners for any reasons are not able to walk in the procession, they will proceed by car by a separate route.

6. The Band and Drum

The band or drum will begin to play the "Dead March" when about 300 paces from the mortuary and continue from such distance as the officer-in-charge may have ordered before marching off: The firing party will receive the command "Tez Chal" (the band Will cease playing) when at a convenient distance from the cemetery or burning ground as directed by the officer-in-charge, the Head Constable in charge of the firing party will give the command "Dhire Chal" and the band and drum will again begin playing.

Section 2

191. Procedure On Arrival At The Place Of Interment/Cremation Ground.

When the head of the procession arrives near the burial ground/ cremation ghat, the ranks of the firing party, at the head of the procession and the band and drums will open out to six paces distance and will halt at the command of the Havildar in-charge of the firing party. The order "Inward Turn (Andar Mud)" and "Rest on your Arms Reversed (SHOK SHASTRA)" will then be given by the Havildar. The coffin/bier will then be moved by the bearers and carried feet-end foremost through the ranks

of the firing party. The order of the procession will now be religious priest, body with the pall bearers and bearers (the former walking behind the body if the path is too narrow to allow them to remain in their correct positions), mourners, band and drum and firing party. The mourners will then fire around the grave/pyre, halt and turn inwards without word of command. The firing party will follow the mourners and will be halted near the grave/pyre under the orders of the Havaldar incharge, who will give the following command *Savdhan Ulta-Shastra, —Ranks, Dahine/Baen Mur—Dhire Chal—Tham-Baen Mur, Shok Shastra.*

The leading detachment (if present) will be halted at some convenient pre-arranged position.

Section 3

192. Procedure During the Service

As soon as the chief mourners are in position and the burial (or cremation) service is ready to be started the bearers will raise the coffin (or bier) from the wooden bearers and lower it into the grave or on to the pyre, having first removed from the coffin (or bier) the flag, head-dress, side-arms, wreaths and so on. Once the coffin (or bier) has been lowered, the bearers will move from the grave (or pyre) side and stand at ease. At the conclusion of the service, if volleys are to be fired the Havaldar will order:—

"Firing Toll, Salami Shastra", "Kandhe Shastra"

"Firing Toli Volleys with Blank Cartridges Load"

"Present—Fire"

(Two more volleys will be similarly fired),

"Khali Kar"

"Bazu Shastra "

"Laga—Sangin"

"Kandhe Shastra "

"Salama Shastra "

If no volley is fired the havaldar will order: —

"Salami Shastra "

"Kandhe Shastra "

"Bazu Shastra "

"Laga—Sangin "

"Kandhe Shastra "

"Salami Shastra "

NOTE: At the funerals if men are detailed to line the route, they will be required to *"Salami Shastra "* to the funeral procession first and *"Ulta Shastra "* before again. *"Shok Shastra "*. They will normally *"Shok Shastra "* as the head of the funeral party approaches them and *"Ulta Shastra "* as the firing party approaches.

Section 4

193. Procedure For Firing The Volleys

The procedure by the firing party for firing three volleys will be as follows, if armed with the rifle:—

- (a) "*Salak Bhar*"—Adopt the loading position. Load—The muzzels of the rifles to be inclined upwards so as to clear the heads of the men in front.
- (b) "*Pesh Kar*"—Rifles will be brought to the position for firing but at an angle of 135 degrees. Head to be kept perfectly still and no attempts made to aim.
- (c) "*Fire*"—Each man will at once press the trigger, remaining at the "*Peshkar*" until the command "*Dobara Bhar*" or "*Khali Kar*" is given—Two more volleys will be similarly fired.
- (d) "*Khali Kar*"—Bring the rifle to the loading position and carry out unloading, remaining in the loading position, rifle at an angle of 135 degrees.

"Kandhe Shastra"

"Bazu Shastra "

Section 5

194. Procedure For Carrying The Coffin

The coffin (or bier) will always be carried feet end foremost and normally the bearers will work on the word of command of the officer or NCO incharge of the bear party. Words of command will be given in a quiet, low tone e.g. "*Uthane ko Taiyar*", "*Dhire Chal*", "*Tham*", "*Rakhne ko Taiyar*". These movements cannot be controlled by a signal and should always be ordered by a word of command.

When in the lift position the bearer party should be evenly spaced four on each side of the coffin (or bier); their arms crossed and around each other's shoulders, the coffin (or bier) resting on the shoulder with the face close to the coffin (or bier) itself. The head dress of the bearers will be carried by an NCO or by drummers to be specially detailed. The bearers will step off with the inside foot to avoid undue rocking of the coffin (or bier).

The NCO incharge of the bearers party will march two paces in the rear and in the centre of the bearer party.

Section 6

195. Procedure For Doing "Reverse Arms" On Your Arms Reversed".

1. *Reverse Arms From The Present (Salami Shastra se Ulta Shastra) Reverse Arm BY Number-One (Gintise Ulta Shastra, Squad-Ek)* on this command bend the right knee and place the foot alongside the left as in the Slope from the Present. At the same time force

the rifle out in front of the body to the full extent of both arms, keeping the left hand as low as possible.

Squad-Two (Squad-Do): Turn the rifle over slowly by bringing the butt between the arms in the direction of the body (changing the grip of the hands) until the position of the rifle is reversed, with the muzzle pointing to the ground, magazine towards the body and in line with the chest, arms straight, finger and thumb of both hands curled round the rifle.

Squad-Three (Squad-Tin): Interchange the position of the hands by seizing the small of the butt with the left hand, back of the hand to the left and immediately seizing the rifle at the point of balance with the right hand.

Squad-Four (Squad-Char): Release the rifle with the right hand and force it under the left armpit so that the magazine is uppermost and in front of the body, muzzle to the rear, rifle against the side, elbow against the rifle, rifle at an angle of 45 degrees. At the same time force the right arm behind the body in line with the waist belt and hold the rifle near the outer band, back of the hand downwards.

NOTE:- The rifle is carried at the reverse only when marching in slow time.

2. Change arms From The Reverse (*Vita Shastra Se Badal Shastra*)

"Change Arms—By Number-One (Gintise Badal Shastra. Squad-Ek)"

Release the rifle with the right hand and cut the right arm to the side. At the same time, hold the rifle at the small of the butt with the left hand and allow the muzzle to swing forward so that the rifle is perpendicular. Keep the left hand at the level of the breast pocket.

Squad-Two (Squad-Do):

Throw the rifle across the body and catch it at the small of the butt with the right hand level with the breast pocket. At the same time cut the left hand to the side.

Squad-Three (Squad-Tin):

Force the rifle under the armpit and seize it near the outer hand with the left hand behind the body, in the position of reverse

NOTE:—On the march, movements are done on successive beats of the - left foot.

3. Rest on your Arms Reversed from the Reverse (*Uta Shastra Se Shok Shastra*):—

NOTE:—Only done when the rifle is under the left arm.

Rest on your Arms Reversed (Shok-Shastra):

Cut the right hand to the side and bring the rifle to a perpendicular position with the left hand; lower the muzzle on to the left foot, between

the toe cap and the lace holes, so that the butt is in front of the body, turn the head and eyes to the right and shoot the right arm to the right at the shoulder level, arms straight, fingers extended, back of hand upper-most, bring the right arm round to the front keeping the arm straight until it has traversed 45 degrees, bend the arms and place the right palm on the butt plate, back of the hand upper-most, fingers extended down the left side of the butt, thumb round the toe of the bun; pause and turn the head and eyes to the front. Keep the hold on the rifle by the right hand and then do the same with the left hand (i.e. first turning the head to the left side etc.). Place the left palm over the right on the butt plate, pause and then turn the head to the front. After this pause, drop both elbows against the body and lower the chin on to the chest.

In performing the above movements the time should be taken from the right or left hand man as the case may be.

Attention from Rest on your Arms Reversed (Shok Shastra Se Savdhan): Squad Attention (Squad-Say dhan):

Raise the head to the normal attention position and also simultaneously rise both the elbows so that the forearms are parallel to the ground.

NOTE: - This command is always given before doing any other movement from

"Rest on Your Arms Reverse'd—Shok Shastra)"

4. Reverse Arms from Rest on your Arms Reversed (Shok Shastra Se Ulta Shastr): -

Reverse Arms by Number-One (Gintise Ulta Shastr, Squad-Ek):

Hold the small of the butt with the left hand, back of the palm to the left and cut the right hand to the side.

Squad-Two (Squad-Do)

Force the rifle under the left armpit and seize it with the right hand behind the back.

5. Rest on Your Arms Reserved from Present Arms (Salami Shastra Se Shok Shastra):

Rest on Your Arms Reversed—By Number—One (Gintise Shok Shastra. Squad—Ek): -

Bring the right foot smartly up to the left, raise the rifle about six inches, and place the right hand underneath the butt plate, thumb round the toe of the butt, the first two joints of the fingers grasping the left side of the butt.

Squad-Two (Squad-Do): -

Turn the rifle over to the front, muzzle leading, butt kept close to

the body so that the position of the rifle is reversed, *i.e.* the muzzle is now pointing towards the ground. Place the muzzle on the toe of the left foot.

During this motion the right hand will be allowed to turn with the rifle so that on the completion of the movement it will be resting on top of the butt plate, fingers and thumb being in the same position as in "one".

Squad-Three (Squad-Tin):

Place the left hand on top of the right over the butt plate. At the same time lower the head on to the chest.

6. Present Arms From Rest On Your Arms Reversed (Shok Shastra Se Salami Shastra):

(Before doing this motion the position of "Attention", as described above, should be taken).

Present Arms by Number-One (Gintise Salami Shastra, Squad-Ek):

Raise the rifle about six inches with the right hand. At the same time seize it with the left hand as in the position held when at the Present, back of the hand downwards and towards the body, thumb to the left.

Squad-Two (Squad-Do)

Hold the rifle with the right hand, just below the small of the butt in the position as held when at the Present, thumb on the left, fingers on the right, back of the hand to the front.

Squad-Three (Squad-Tin):

Turn the rifle over gradually lowering the butt towards the body. When the rifle is horizontal, smartly come to the Present Arms position with the rifle and simultaneously bend the right knee and move the right foot to its correct position.

SECTION 7

196. Exercises with Sword when used in "Funeral Drill"

These movements will be done by the Officer/Officers carrying the sword in a funeral party.

While the Commander will give commands for Armed Drill, the equivalent movements with sword will be performed by Commander himself, and other Officers carrying the sword.

(a) Reverse Arms from the Present
(Ulta Shastra se Badal Shastra)

A Equivalent movement with sword can be done in two parts.

(j) Bring the sword to the "Recover".

(ii) Then reverse the sword under the right arm, so that the point is downwards and the edge is upwards. The hilt is grasped with right hand, the right elbow is close to the body and the sword is at the angle of 45 degree.

- (b) Change Arms form the Reverse (Ulta Shastra Se Badal Shastra)** Equivalent movement with sword be done in the three parts:
 (i) First bring the sword to "carry"
 (ii) Then, pass the sword across the body and change the hands, i.e., grip the hilt with left hand and cut the right hand to the side.
 (iii) Now reverse the sword under left armpit and bring the right hand to grasp the blade at the rear of the body. Left elbow is close to the body and sword is at the angle of 45 degree.
- (c) Rest on your Arms Reversed from the Reverse (Ulta Shastra se Shok Shastra)** The sword is brought down so that the point is on the ground between the feet; the edge of the sword is towards the right. For this, first bring the right hand to grasp the hilt and cut the left hand to the side. Now, slowly bring the sword down so that the point is between the feet and edge is towards the right. Extend the left arm to the left with the back of the hand upwards. Bring the left hand slowly to the top of the hilt and place it on the right. Both the elbows should be along the sides. Now, lower the head on the breast. All the movements should be co-ordinated with the men carrying the Arms Drill.
- (d) Attention from Savdhan):** Rest on yours Arms Reversed (Shok Shastra se Raise you head.
- (e) Present Shastra):** Arm from Rest on Arms Reserved (Shok Shastra se Salami
 The equivalent movement with sword are done in three parts:
 (i) First cut the left arm away to the side" and bring the sword to the 'Carry' position.
 (ii) Then bring the sword to 'Recover' position.
 (iii) Now bring the sword to 'Salute' position.
- (f) There can be another equivalent movement for the command of Arms Drill to 'Reverse Arms from rest on your Arms Reversed' (Shok Shastra se Ulta Shastra):** On the command of Ulta. Shastra for the equivalent movement with sword, carry the sword with right liana under the right armpit at the same time seizing the blade with the left hand behind the back (position already described above).

ANNEXURE

WORDS OF COMMAND

| SI. No. | In English | In Hindi |
|---------|--|---|
| 1 | Halt | Tham |
| 2 | About Turn | Piche Mur |
| 3 | Right Turn | Dahine Mur |
| 4 | Right Form | Dahine Ban |
| 5 | Right Incline | Aadha Dahine Mur |
| 6 | Left Turn | Baye Mur |
| 7 | Left Form | Baye Ban |
| 8 | Left Incline | Aadha Baye Mur |
| 9 | Mark Time | Kadam Tal |
| 10 | Halt (When Marking Time) | Tham (Kadam Tal Par) |
| 11 | Forward (When Marking Time) | Aage Bar (Kadam Tal Par) |
| 12 | Break Into Quick Time, Quick March | Tej Chal Me Aa, Tej Chal |
| 13 | Break Into Slow Time, Slow March | Dhire Chal Me Aa, Dhire Chal |
| 14 | Break Into Double Time, Double March | Daur Chal Me Aa, Daur Chal |
| 15 | On The Right/Left Form Squad | Dahine / Baye Squad Bana |
| 16 | Open Order March | Khuli Line Chal |
| 17 | Close Order March | Nikat Line Chal |
| 18 | Squad Attention | Squad Savdhan |
| 19 | Stand-At-Ease | Vishram |
| 20 | Stand-Easy | Aaram Se |
| 21 | Right (or Left) Dress | Dahine (Ya Baye) Saj |
| 22 | Eyes Front | Samane Dhekh |
| 23 | Turning About By Numbers, Squad— One | Ginti Se Piche Murna, Squad Piche Mur Ek |
| 24 | Turning to the Right By Numbers, Right Turn-One | Ginti Se Dahine Murna, Dahine- Mur- Ek |
| 25 | Squad—two | Squad Do |
| 26 | Squad Will Advance, Quick March | Squad Aage Barega, Tej Chal |
| 27 | Step-Out | Lamba Kadam |

| Sl. No. | In English | In Hindi |
|----------------|--|--|
| 28 | Step Short | Chota Kadam |
| 29 | Paces Forward/Step Back-March | Kadam Aage/Piche Chal |
| 30 | Change Step—One | Kadam Badal-Ek |
| 31 | Squad—Two | Squad-Do |
| 32 | Squad—Three | Squad-Tin |
| 33 | Double March | Daur Ke Chal |
| 34 | Salute TO The Front By Numbers— Squad One | Ginati Se Samne Salute-Squad Ek |
| 35 | Salute To The Right—Salute | Dahine Ko Salute-Salute |
| 36 | Salute To The Left—Salute | Baye Ko Salute-Salute |
| 37 | Squad, Dismiss | Squad, Visarjan |
| 38 | Salute To The Right/Left Squad Salute | Dahine (Baye) Ko Salute- Squad Salute |
| 39 | Squad/Platoon Fall-in | Squad/Platoon line bana |
| 40 | Blank File | Khali file |
| 41 | By The Right Quick March | Dahine se taj chal |
| 42 | Platoon Will Retire, About Turn | Platoon pecha lautega pecha moor |
| 43 | Platoon Will Advance, About Turn | Platoon aage badega pecha moor |
| 44 | Change Direction Right, Right Form | Dahine Disha Badal, Dahine Ban |
| 45 | Change Direction Left, Left Form | Baye Disha Badal, Baye Ban |
| 46 | Platoon Forward | Platoon Aage Bar |
| 47 | Move To The Right In Threes, A Right Turn | Tino Tin Me Aage Chalega, Dahine Mur |
| 48 | By The Left Quick March | Baye Se Tej Chal |
| 49 | Platoon Will Advance, Left Turn | Platoon Aage Barega, Baye Mur |
| 50 | Platoon Will Retire, Left Turn | Platoon Piche Barega, Baye Mur |
| 51 | Platoon Will Advance, Right Turn | Platoon Aage Barega, Dahine Mur |
| 52 | Platoon Will Retire, Right Turn | Platoon Piche Barega, Baye Mur |
| 53 | Change Direction Left/Right, fell Left/Right Wheel. | Baye/Dahine Disha Badal, Baye/Dahine Ghum |
| 54 | On The Left, Form Squad/ Platoon | Baye ko Squad/Platoon Bana |

| Sl. No. | In English | In Hindi |
|----------------|---|---|
| 55 | On The Right Form Squad/ Platoon | Dahine Ko Squad/Platoon Bana |
| 56 | Form Two Ranks | Do Line Bana |
| 57 | Form Three Ranks | Tin Line Bana |
| 58 | In Three Ranks Right Dress | Tin Line Me Dahine Saj |
| 59 | Form Single File From The Left— Quick March | Baye se Ek File Bana, Tej Chal |
| 60 | Form Single File From The Left | Baye Se Ek File Bana |
| 61 | At The Halt On The Right, Form Threes — Quick March | Dahine Tham Kar Tino Tin Bana, Tej Chal |
| 62 | Advance In Single File, From The Right, Quick March | Dahine Se Ek File Me Aage Bar, Tej Chal |
| 63 | Form Single File, From The Right | Dahine Se Ek File Bana |
| 64 | At the Halt On The Left Form Quick March | Baye Thamkar Line Bana, Tej Chal |
| 65 | On the Left Form Line | Baye Par Line Bana |
| 66 | Attention | Savdhan |
| 67 | Slope Arms By Numbers — Squad One | Ginti Se Kandhe Sastra-Squad Ek |
| 68 | Order Arms By Numbers —Squad One | Ginti Se Baju Sastra-Squad Ek |
| 69 | Present Arms By Numbers — Squad One | Ginti Se Salami Sastra-Squad Ek |
| 70 | The Squad Will Fix Bayonets, Squad Fix | Squad Sangin lagayega, Sangin |
| 71 | Squad Bayonets | Squad laga |
| 72 | (A) Squad Will Unfix Bayonets, Squad Unfix (B) Squad Bayonets | Squad Sangin Utarega, Sangin Squad Utar |
| 73 | Port Arms | Baye Sastra |
| 74 | For Inspection Port Arms By Numbers, Squad—One | Ginati Se Nirichar Ke Liye Baye Sastra Squad- Ek |
| 75 | Ease Spring By Numbers— Squad One | Ginati Se Bolat Chla, Squad Ek |
| 76 | Examine Arms | Ganch Sastra |
| 77 | Trail Arms | Tol Sastra |
| 78 | Trail Arms By Numbers — Squad One | Ginati se Tol Sastra, quad –Ek |
| 79 | Secure Arms By Numbers— Squad One | Ginati se Sanbhal Sastra, quad –Ek |

| Sl. No. | In English | In Hindi |
|---------|--|---|
| 80 | Change Arms By Numbers, Squad—One | Ginati se Badal Sastra, Squad—Ek |
| 81 | Ground Arms By Numbers, Squad—One | Ginati se Bhumi Sastra, Squad – Ek |
| 82 | Short Trail | Samtol Sastra |
| 83 | Sling Arms | Latka Sastra |
| 84 | Draw Swords | Nikal Kirch |
| 85 | Slope Swords, | Kandhe Kirch |
| 86 | Return Swords By Numbers, Squad One | Ginati Se Vapas Kirch, Squad- Ek |
| 87 | No... Centre File And File Of Direction, The Objective Is | No. Madhy File Aur Disha Ke File Udyadesh Hai |
| 88 | To The Right Extend | Dahine Fail |
| 89 | To The Left Extend | Baye Fail |
| 90 | From The Centre Extend | Madhy Se Fail |
| 91 | On The Right Close | Dahine Simat |
| 92 | On The Left Close | Baye Simat |
| 93 | On The Centre Close | Madhy Simat |
| 94 | Street Lining From The Rear on Both Sides Of The Road. .. Paces Extend, Quick March | Sadak Ke Dono Taraf Piche Se- Kadam Kholkar Line Bana, Tej Chal |
| 95 | On the Right/Left Close | Dahine/Baye Simat |
| 96 | Inward About Wheel | Aandar Ko Piche Ghum |
| 97 | Street Lining From The Rear On Both Sides Of The Road Alternatively... .Paces Extend | Sadak Ke Dono Taraf Piche Se Bari-Bari -Kadam Kholkar Line Bana |
| 98 | Street Lining From The Centre On Both Sides of The Road, Ranks Outward Turn | Sadak Ke Dono Taraf Madhy Se Kholkar Line Bana Liene Bahar Mur |
| 99 | From The Rear.... Paces Extend Quick March. | Piche Se Kadam Kholkar Tej chal |
| 100 | Street Lining From The Rear Down The Centre Facing Outward. . Paces Extend | Sadak Ke Madhy Bahar Munh Karate Huye Piche Se Kadam Khol Kar Line Bana |
| 101 | Outward About Wheel | Bahar Ko Piche Ghum |
| 102 | Steady | Hilo Mat |
| 103 | No... Platoon, Eyes Front | No. Platoon, Samne Dekh |
| 104 | The Company Will Retire | Company Piche Loitegi |
| 105 | The Company Will Advance | Company Aage Baregi |

| SI. No. | In English | In Hindi |
|----------------|--|---|
| 106 | Change Direction Right, Right Wheel | Dahine Disha Badal, Dahine Ghum |
| 107 | Forward | Aage Bar |
| 108 | Advance (or Retire) In Column Of Threes From The Right, Company— Right/Left Turn | Dahine Se Tino-Tin Kalam Me Aage Bar (Piche Loit), Company Dahine/Baye Mur |
| 109 | Move To The Right (or Left) In Column Of Threes, Company Right (or Left) Turn | Tino Tin Column Me Dahine (Ya Baye) Chal |
| 110 | Move TO The Right (Or Left) In Line Of Platoon In Threes. Company Right (Or Left) Turn, Quick March | Platoon Ki Tino Tin Ki Line Me Dahine (Ya Baye) Chal, Company Dahine (Ya Baye) Mur Tej Chal |
| 111 | On The Left Form Line, Remainder Left Turn, Quick March. | Baye Ko Line Bana, Baki Baye Mur, Tej Chal |
| 112 | By The Left, At The Halt, Facing Left, Form Line | Baye Se Tamkar Baye Ki Disha Me Line Bana |
| 113 | Advance In Column | Kalam Me Aage Bar |
| 114 | Retire In Column, Company About Turn | Kalam Me Piche Loit, Company Piche Mur |
| 115 | On No.. . Platoon Form Column Of Platoons, Remainder Mark Time | No. Platoon Par Platoono Ki Kalam Bana, Baki Kadam Tal |
| 116 | On No.. Platoon, From Column Of Platoons, Remainder Quick March | No. Platoon Par Platoono Ki Kalam Bana, Baki Tej Chal |
| 117 | On No... Platoon Form Close Column Of Platoons, Remainder Double March | No. Platoon Par Platoono Ke Nikat Kalam Bana, Baki Daur Ke Chal |
| 118 | At The Halt Facing Left (or Right) Form Line | Tam Kar Baye, (Ya Dahine) Disha Line Bana |
| 119 | Change Direction Right | Dahine Disha Badal |
| 120 | Advance in Column of Threes From The Right, Company Right Turn, Platoons Left Wheel, Quick March | Dahine Se Tino Tin Kalam Me Aage Bar, Company Dahine Mur, Platoon Baye Ghum, Tej Chal |
| 121 | Move To The Right In Column of Threes, Company Right Turn, Platoon On The Left To The Front, Remainder Left Wheel, Quick March | Tino Tin Kalam Me Dahine Chal, Company Dahine Mur, Baye Platoon Samane Ko, Baki Baye Ghum, Tej Chal |

| SI. No. | In English | In Hindi |
|---------|---|--|
| 122 | On The Left Form Line, Remainder Left Incline, Double March | Baye Ko Line Bana, Baki Aadha Baye Mur, Daur Ke Chal |
| 123 | At The Halt Facing Right Form Column Of Platoons, Platoons Right Form, Quick March. | Tamkar Dahine Disha Platoono Ki Kalam Bana, Platoono Dahine Ban, Tej Chal |
| 124 | At The Halt, Facing Left, Into Line, Platoons Left Form, Quick March, | Tamkar Dahine Disha Line Bana, Platoono Baye Ban, Tej Chal |
| 125 | Move To The Right/Left, In Line Of Platoons In Threes, Company Right/ Left Turn | Platoon Ki Tino Tin Ki LineMe Dahine/ Baye Chal, Company Dahine/Baye Mur |
| 126 | On The Right Form Column (or Close Column) Of Platoons, Remainder Right Turn, Quick March | Dahine Ko Platoono Ki Kalam (Ya Nikat Kalam) Bana, Baki Dahine Mur , Tej Chal |
| 127 | Advance In Column Of Quick March | Dahine Se Platoono Ki Kalam Me Aage Bar, Baki Dahine Mur, Tej Chal |
| 128 | Advance In Line Of Platoons In Threes From The Left, Company Left Turn, Platoons Right Wheel, Quick March | Baye Se Platoono Ki Tino Tin Ki Line Me Aage Bar, Company Baye Mur, Platoono Dahine Ghum, Tej Chal |
| 129 | The Company Will Form Column of Platoons, On The Left form Platoons | Company Platoono Ke Kalam Bnayegi, Baye Platoon Bana |
| 130 | At The Halt On The Left Form Close Column Of Platoons | Thamkar Baye Ko Platoono Ka Nikat Kalam Bana |
| 131 | At The Halt Facing Left Form-Column (or Close Column) Of Platoons | Tamkar Baye Disha Platoono Ka Kalam (Ya Nikat Kalam) Bana |
| 132 | Facing Left Advance In Column | Bayi Disha Kalam me Aage Bar |
| 133 | On the Right Form Line Of Platoons In Threes at Paces Interval, Remainder Double March | Dahine Ko... Kadam Ke Phasle Par Platoono Ki Tino Tin Ki Line Bana, Baki Daur Ke Chal |
| 134 | At The Halt On The Right Form Line Of Platoons In Threes at Column Paces Interval, Remainder Left Incline | Tamkar Dahine Ko Kadam Ke Phasle Par Platoono Ki Tino Tin Ki line Bana, Baki Aadha Baye Mur |

| Sl. No. | In English | In Hindi |
|----------------|--|--|
| 135 | Advance In Column Of Threes From The Left, Platoon On The Left To The Front, Remainder Left Wheel, Company Quick March | Baye Se Tino Tin Ki Kalam Me Aage Barega, Baye Platoon Aage Baki Baye Ghum, Company Tej Chal |
| 136 | Company Facing Left Advance Column Of Threes, Platoons Left Wheel, Quick March | Company Baye Disha Tino Tin Ki Kalam Me Aage Bar, Platoon Baye Ghum, Tej Chal |
| 137 | Company, At The Halt Form Line, On The Right Form Platoons | Company Tamkar Line Bnayegi, Dahine Par Platoon Bana |
| 138 | Advance/Retire In Column Of Platoons, Company Left/ Right Turn | Platoon Ki Kalam Me Aage Barega/ Piche Loitega, company Baye/Daye Mur |
| 139 | Move To The Right In Line Platoons In Threes, Platoons Right Wheel | Platoon Ki Tino Tin Ki Line Me Dahine Chal, Platoon Dahine Ghum |
| 140 | Number | Ginati Kar |
| 141 | Odd Numbers One Pace Forward, Even Numbers One Pace Step Back March | Visam Ek Kadam Aage, Sam Ek Kadam Piche Chal |
| 142 | Stand Fast The Right Hand Man, Odd Numbers To The Right, Even Numbers To The Left, Ranks Right And Left turn | Dahine Javan Khra Rhega, Baki Visram Dahine, Sam Baye, Line Dahine Aur Baye Mur |
| 143 | Form Three ranks—Quick March | Tin Line Bana – Tej Chal |
| 144 | Fall Out The Officers | Officers Line Tor |
| 145 | National Salute | National Salute |
| 146 | Present And Ready For Inspection | Sriman Ji Pared Nirichan Ko Hajir Hai |
| 147 | No...Company Stand Fast Remainder Stand At Ease | No.... company Khari Rahe, Baki Vishram |
| 148 | Move To The Right In Column Of Threes, Battalion Right Turn, By The Left Quick March | Tino Tin Kalam Me Dahine Chal, Battalion dahine Mur, Baye Tej Chal |
| 149 | At The Halt, Facing Left, Form Close Column Of Companies | Tamkar Baye Disha, Company Ke Nikat Kalam Bana |
| 150 | No... Company, Halt, Com- Will Advance, Left Turn | No.... Company Tham, Company Aage Baregi, Baye Mur |

| Sl. No. | In English | In Hindi |
|----------------|---|--|
| 151 | No. . . Company. By The Right, Quick March | No...Company Dahine Se Tej Chal |
| 152 | 1:1 Succession Advance In Column Of Threes From The Right | Dahine Se Bari-Bari Tino Tin Ki Kalam Me Aage Bar |
| 153 | Move to The Right In Column Of Route, Battalion Right Turn | Chuch Kalam Me Dahine Chal, Battalion Dahine Mur |
| 154 | Battalion Will March Past In Column Of Route | Battalion Kuch Kalam Me Manch Se Gujregi |
| 155 | No. . . . Company, By The Left Quick March | No...Company, Baye Se Tej Chal |
| 156 | Platoon? At The Halt, Right Form | Platoon Tamkar, Dahine Ban |
| 157 | Quick March, Platoons Left Dress, Platoons Eyes Front | Tej Chal, Platoon Baye Saj, Platoon Samne Dekh |
| 158 | Battalion Will March Past In Quick Time— By The Left Quick March | Battalion Tej Chal Se Manch Se Gujregi, Baye se Tej Chal |
| 159 | Change Direction Left | Baye Disha Badal |
| 160 | Platoons At The Halt, Left Form | Platoon Tam Kar Baye Ban |
| 161 | Center Dress | Madhy Saj |
| 162 | The Battalion Will March Past In Slow Time, By The Right Slow March | Battalion Dhire Chal Me Manch Se Gujregi, Dahine Se Dhire Chal |
| 163 | Break Into Quick Time, Quick March | Tej Chal Me Aa, Tej Chal |
| 164 | In Succession Advance In Column of Threes From The Right | Bari-Bari Tino Tin Kalam Me Dahine Se Aage Bar |
| 165 | Facing Left Advance In Column Of Platoons | Baye Disha Platoon Ke Kalam Me Aage Bar |
| 166 | Advance In Review Order, By Centre, The Quick March | Smikcha Karm Se Madhy Se, Tej Chal |
| 167 | For Inspection, Port Arms | Nirichr Ke Liye, Baye Sastra |
| 168 | Guard Examine Arms | Guard Ganch Sastra |
| 169 | Ease Spring | Bolt Chla |
| 170 | Marker | Darsak |
| 171 | Duties on Parade | Duties Pared Par |
| 172 | Guard Will Fix Bayonets, Guard Fix Bayonets — Attention | Guard Sangin Lgayega- Guard Sangin Laga—Savdhan |
| 173 | Guard Number | Guard Ginti Kar |

| SI. No. | In English | In Hindi |
|---------|--|--|
| 174 | Guard Will Unfix Bayonets— Guard Unfix Bayonets— Attention. | Guard Sangin Utarega—Guard Sangin—Utar---Savdhan |
| 175 | No Front (or Rear) Rank Stick Orderly, Stick Orderly—Dismiss | No. Samne (Ya Pichli) Line Stick-Orderly Visarjan |
| 176 | Guard Commander Take Over | Guard Commander Jagah Lo |
| 177 | Guard By The Right Quick March | Guard Dahine Se Tej Chal |
| 178 | Old Guard Slope Arms | Purana Guard Kandhe Sastra |
| 179 | New Guard Slope Arms | Naya Guard Kandhe Sastra |
| 180 | Old Guard Order Arms | Purana Guard Baju Sastra |
| 181 | New Guard Order Arms | Naya Guard Baju Sastra |
| 182 | Old Guard Stand At Ease | Purana Guard Visram |
| 183 | New Guard Stand At Ease | Naya Guard Visram |
| 184 | As a Guard Number | Guard Ki Tarah Ginati Kar |
| 185 | First Relief | Pahali Badali |
| 186 | Second Relief | Dusari Badali |
| 187 | Third Relief | Tisari Badali |
| 188 | First Relief Stand Fast, Remainder Stand At Ease | Pahali Badali Khari Rahegi, Baki Visram |
| 189 | First Relief Slope Arms | Pahali Badali Kandhe Sastra |
| 190 | Relief Form Up | Badali Bana |
| 191 | Relief Move To The Right In Single File—Right Turn | Badali Ek Line Me Dahine Chal, Dahine Mur |
| 192 | Old Guard Attention | Purana Guard Savdhan |
| 193 | New Guard Attention | Naya Guard Savdhan |
| 194 | Old Guard Close Order March | Purana Guard Nikat Line Chal |
| 195 | Old Guard Move To The Right In File (Or Single File) Right Turn | Purana Guard—Ek File Me Dahine Chal, Dahine Mur |
| 196 | New Guard Present Arms | Naya Guard Salami Sastra |
| 197 | Old Guard Eyes Left-Eyes Front | Purana Guard Baye Dekh, Samane Dekh |
| 198 | Relieving Sentries | Badali Sentries |

| Sl. No. | In English | In Hindi |
|----------------|---|--|
| 199 | Sentries Pass | Sentries Badali Karo |
| 200 | Relief Quick March | Badali Tej Chal |
| 201 | Guard Turn Out | Guard Line Bana |
| 202 | Guard Ready For Inspection | Nirichan Ke Liye Guard Hajir Hai |
| 203 | Turn In The Guard—Dismiss the Guard | Guard Line Tor-Guard hajir Hai |
| 204 | Halt, Who Comes There | Tam Kaun Aata Hai |
| 205 | Grand Round or Visiting Round | Bara Muayana Ya Chota Muayana |
| 206 | Advance Grand Round or Visiting Round, All Is Well | Aage Baro Bara Muayana Ya Chota Muayana Sab Thik Hai |
| 207 | Stand Down The Guard | Guard Jagah Chor |
| 208 | Fall In The Guard | Guard Line Bana |
| 209 | Advance, One | Ek, Aage Baro |
| 210 | Pass Friend All Is Well | Chlo Dost Sab Thik Hai |
| 211 | General Salute | General Salute |
| 212 | Guard of Honour Consisting of.. Officers And... Other Ranks Is Ready For Your Inspection, Sir | --Ke Officero Aur Javano Ka Samman Guard Nirichan Ke Liye Hajir Hai Sriman |
| 213 | Standing Load | Khare Bhar |
| 214 | Present | Pes Kar |
| 215 | Unload | Khali Kar |
| 216 | Parade Will Give Three Cheers | Parade Tin Bar Jai Bolegi |
| 217 | Reverse Arms | Ulata Sastra |
| 218 | Reverse Arms By Numbers, One | Ginati Se Ulata Sastra, Squad, Ek |
| 219 | Change Arms By Numbers, One | Ginati Se Badal Sastra, Squad, Ek |
| 220 | Rest On Your Arms Reversed | Sok Sastra |
| 221 | Rest On Your Arms Reversed By Number, One | Ginati Se Sok Sastra Squad, Ek |
| 222 | Present Arms By Number, One | Ginati Se Salami Sastra Squad, Ek |